

Notes on  
V5B4 Selected Topics in PDE and  
Mathematical Models - Dispersive Equations

Xian Liao  
Universität Bonn  
Winter Term 2017-2018

These are short incomplete notes, only for participants of the course V5B4 at the University of Bonn, Winter Term 2017-2018. A current version can be found at

<http://www.math.uni-bonn.de/ag/ana/WiSe1718/Schroedinger/Dispersive.pdf>.

Correction are welcome and should be sent to

*xianliao(at)math.uni-bonn.de*.

They do not substitute textbooks and the following textbooks/lecture notes/articles are recommended.

- T. Cazenave: Semilinear Schrödinger equations.
- F. Linares, G. Ponce: Introduction to nonlinear dispersive equations.
- T. Tao: Nonlinear dispersive equations - local and global analysis.
- J. Colliander, M. Keel, G. Staffilani, H. Takaoka, T. Tao: The theory of nonlinear Schrödinger equations.
- H. Koch, D. Tataru: Conserved energies for the cubic NLS in 1-d.

# Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction</b>	<b>4</b>
1.1	Basic concepts . . . . .	4
1.1.1	Dispersion . . . . .	4
1.1.2	Semilinearity . . . . .	5
1.1.3	Symmetries/Invariances . . . . .	7
1.1.4	Conservation laws . . . . .	9
1.1.5	Solitary wave . . . . .	12
1.2	Completely integrable case . . . . .	13
1.2.1	The direct transform . . . . .	15
1.2.2	Inverse scattering transform . . . . .	19
<b>2</b>	<b>Wellposedness</b>	<b>22</b>
2.1	Strichartz estimates . . . . .	23
2.2	$L^2$ theory . . . . .	27
2.2.1	Local well-posedness in $L^2$ . . . . .	27
2.2.2	Global well-posedness in $L^2$ . . . . .	31
2.2.3	$L^2$ critical case . . . . .	32
2.3	Sobolev spaces . . . . .	34
2.3.1	Sobolev spaces $H^s(\mathbb{R}^d)$ . . . . .	34
2.3.2	Sobolev spaces $W^{k,p}(\mathbb{R}^d)$ . . . . .	37
2.4	$H^1$ theory . . . . .	39
2.4.1	Local well-posedness in $H^1$ . . . . .	39
2.4.2	Global well-posedness in $H^1$ . . . . .	40
2.4.3	The virial space case . . . . .	44
<b>3</b>	<b>Large time behaviour</b>	<b>46</b>
3.1	Virial and Morawetz identities . . . . .	46
3.1.1	Pohozaev's identity . . . . .	46
3.1.2	The Virial and Morawetz identities . . . . .	47
3.2	Blowup and scattering . . . . .	50
3.2.1	Blowup . . . . .	50
3.2.2	Scattering . . . . .	53
<b>4</b>	<b>Solitary waves</b>	<b>60</b>
4.1	A minimiser problem . . . . .	60
4.1.1	Space $H_r^1(\mathbb{R}^d)$ . . . . .	60
4.1.2	Compact minimisation . . . . .	61
4.1.3	Euler-Lagrangian equation . . . . .	63
4.1.4	Regularity and decay property . . . . .	64

4.1.5	Classification of minimisers . . . . .	66
4.2	Concentration compactness . . . . .	67
4.3	Orbital stability . . . . .	71
4.3.1	A second minimiser problem . . . . .	71
4.3.2	Orbital stability . . . . .	75
<b>5</b>	<b>Conserved energies</b>	<b>77</b>

# 1 Introduction

In this lecture we will mainly consider the Cauchy problem for the semilinear Schrödinger equation

$$\begin{cases} i\partial_t u + \Delta u = \kappa|u|^{p-1}u, \\ u|_{t=0} = u_0(x). \end{cases} \quad (\text{NLS})$$

Here  $u = u(t, x) \in \mathbb{C}$  denotes the unknown wave function and  $t \in \mathbb{R}$ ,  $x \in \mathbb{R}^d$ ,  $d \geq 1$  denote the time and space variables respectively.  $\kappa$  takes value in  $\{\pm 1\}$  and we call the nonlinear Schrödinger equation in (NLS) defocusing if  $\kappa = 1$  (repulsive nonlinearity) and focusing if  $\kappa = -1$  (attractive nonlinearity) respectively.  $p > 1$  is a real constant which plays an important role in the mathematical theory and if  $p = 3$  we call (NLS) the cubic nonlinear Schrödinger equation.

We will consider the wellposedness issue of this Cauchy problem (NLS), the asymptotic behaviour of the solutions (scattering, blowup, solitons, etc.) and the conserved energies for the completely integrable case. We will see that the results will depend heavily on the space dimension  $d$ , the sign of  $\kappa$  and the nonlinearity exponent  $p$ . We will also pay much attention to the functional space where the initial data  $u_0$  stays in.

## 1.1 Basic concepts

We first explain (formally) some basic properties of the equation in (NLS).

### 1.1.1 Dispersion

What does dispersion mean? Is the equation (NLS) dispersive? Indeed this dispersion property is related to the linear part of the equation.

We now give some formal explanation. Let  $d = 1$  and let  $u(x, t)$  be a plane-wave solution

$$u(t, x) = e^{i(kx - \omega t)} = e^{ik(x - (\omega/k)t)}$$

of the linear Schrödinger equation  $iu_t + u_{xx} = 0$ . Here  $k$  denotes the wave number (waves per unit length) and  $\omega = \omega(k) = k^2$  denotes the (angular) frequency. Hence  $u(t, x)$  is a travelling wave with the phase velocity  $c(k) =$

$\omega(k)/k = k$  and the larger  $k$  is, the faster the wave travels, that is, high frequency waves travel much faster than low frequency waves! More generally, we take the inverse Fourier transform of the initial data

$$u_0(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{\mathbb{R}} e^{ikx} \widehat{u}_0(k) dk,$$

then by superposition the solution of the linear Schrödinger equation reads (noticing that  $e^{ik(x-c(k)t)}$  is the solution with initial data  $e^{ikx}$ )

$$u(t, x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{\mathbb{R}} e^{ik(x-c(k)t)} \widehat{u}_0(k) dk.$$

The fact that various Fourier modes travel at different speeds is considered to be dispersive phenomenon mathematically.

The well known Korteweg-de Vries (KdV) equation is also a nonlinear dispersive equation:

$$\partial_t u + u_{xxx} + uu_x = 0, \quad u|_{t=0} = u_0. \quad (\text{KdV})$$

The linear part  $u_t + u_{xxx} = 0$  has the phase velocity  $c(k) = k^2$ .

There is an obvious example which is not a dispersive equation:

$$\partial_t u + c\partial_x u = 0, \quad u|_{t=0} = u_0, \quad \text{where } c = \text{constant}.$$

The solution  $u(t, x) = u_0(x - ct)$  always travels at constant speed  $c$ .

### 1.1.2 Semilinearity

The nonlinear Schrödinger equation (NLS) is of the semilinear form:

$$i\partial_t u + \Delta u = f(u), \quad \text{i.e. } \partial_t u = i\Delta u - if(u), \quad u|_{t=0} = u_0, \quad (1.1)$$

where the function  $f$  depends nonlinearly only on lower order terms:  $u$  (not on  $\partial_t u, \nabla^2 u$ )!

Recall the ODE theory. Consider the ODE of the form

$$v' = Lv + f(v), \quad v|_{t=0} = v_0,$$

where  $v : \mathbb{R} \mapsto \mathbb{R}^d$  is the unknown,  $t \in \mathbb{R}$  denotes the time variable,  $L \in M_d(\mathbb{R})$  some linear transform and  $f : \mathbb{R}^d \mapsto \mathbb{R}^d$  some function. We have the Duhamel formula for the solution

$$v(t) = e^{tL}v_0 + \int_0^t e^{(t-t')L} f(v(t')) dt'.$$

Now we take the Fourier transform in  $x$ -variable to the equation (1.1)

$$\partial_t \widehat{u}(t, \xi) = -i|\xi|^2 \widehat{u}(t, \xi) - i \widehat{f(u)}(\xi), \quad \widehat{u}(0, \xi) = \widehat{u}_0(\xi).$$

View  $\xi$  as a parameter, then we also have (at least formally) the Duhamel formula for  $\widehat{u}(\cdot; \xi)$

$$\widehat{u}(t, \xi) = e^{-it|\xi|^2} \widehat{u}_0(\xi) - i \int_0^t e^{-i(t-t')|\xi|^2} \widehat{f(u)}(t', \xi) dt'.$$

We calculate the inverse Fourier transform of the tempered distribution  $e^{-it|\xi|^2}$  ( $t$  viewed as parameter) now. We consider  $e^{-it|\xi|^2}$  as the limit of the Schwartz functions  $e^{-\varepsilon|\xi|^2 - it|\xi|^2}$  as  $\varepsilon \rightarrow 0$  pointwisely (and hence in the tempered distribution sense). Then recalling

$$\mathcal{F}^{-1}(e^{-\frac{1}{2}|\xi|^2}) = e^{-\frac{1}{2}|x|^2}, \quad \mathcal{F}^{-1}(g(a\xi)) = a^{-d} \mathcal{F}^{-1}(g)(a^{-1}x),$$

$\mathcal{F}^{-1}(e^{-it|\xi|^2})$  is the limit of  $(2(\varepsilon + it))^{-\frac{d}{2}} e^{-\frac{|x|^2}{4(\varepsilon + it)}}$ :  $(2it)^{-\frac{d}{2}} e^{-\frac{|x|^2}{4it}}$ . Recalling also

$$\mathcal{F}^{-1}(\widehat{g\hat{h}}) = (2\pi)^{-\frac{d}{2}} g * h,$$

we derive from the above Duhamel formula that

$$u(t, x) = K_t * u_0 - i \int_0^t K_{t-s} * f(u(s, \cdot)) ds, \quad K_t := (4\pi it)^{-\frac{d}{2}} e^{i\frac{|x|^2}{4t}}.$$

We rewrite it as

$$u(t, x) = S(t)u_0 - i \int_0^t S(t-s)f(u(s, \cdot))ds, \quad (\text{Duhamel})$$

where we denote  $S(t)$  as the following unitary group

$$S(t)g := e^{it\Delta}g = K_t * g = \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} (4\pi it)^{-\frac{d}{2}} e^{i\frac{|x-y|^2}{4t}} g(y) dy. \quad (\text{St})$$

It is obvious from (St) that

$$\|S(t)u_0\|_{L^\infty(\mathbb{R}^d)} \leq |4\pi t|^{-\frac{d}{2}} \|u_0\|_{L^1(\mathbb{R}^d)}, \quad (1.2)$$

which implies that if  $u_0 \in L^1(\mathbb{R}^d)$ , then the solution  $S(t)u_0$  of the linear Schrödinger equation decays of rate  $|t|^{-\frac{d}{2}}$  as  $|t| \rightarrow \infty$ . This is exactly the dispersion phenomenon.

Let us recall some facts for the unitary group  $S(t)$ . Let  $H = L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)$  be the Hilbert space and  $\Delta$  be the densely defined selfadjoint operator with the domain  $D(\Delta) = H^2(\mathbb{R}^d)$ . By Stone's theorem (see e.g. Prof. Koch's lecture notes "V3B2 PDE and Modelling" Chapter 3), there exists a unique strongly continuous unitary group  $S(t) := e^{it\Delta}$  on  $H$  with

$$\left. \frac{d}{dt} \right|_{t=0} S(t)\phi = i\Delta\phi, \quad \forall \phi \in D(\Delta) = H^2(\mathbb{R}^d).$$

Since  $S(t)$  is unitary, then

$$\|S(t)u_0\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)} = \|u_0\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)}. \quad (1.3)$$

Recall the Riesz-Thorine interpolation theorem:

**Theorem 1.1.** *Let  $1 \leq p_0 \neq p_1 \leq \infty$ ,  $1 \leq q_0 \neq q_1 \leq \infty$ . If  $T \in \mathcal{L}(L^{p_j}(\mathbb{R}^d), L^{q_j}(\mathbb{R}^d))$  be the linear operator from  $L^{p_j}(\mathbb{R}^d)$  to  $L^{q_j}(\mathbb{R}^d)$  with the operator norm  $M_j$ ,  $j = 0, 1$ , then for any  $0 \leq \theta \leq 1$ ,*

$$T \in \mathcal{L}(L^{p_\theta}(\mathbb{R}^d), L^{q_\theta}(\mathbb{R}^d)), \quad \frac{1}{p_\theta} = \frac{1-\theta}{p_0} + \frac{\theta}{p_1}, \quad \frac{1}{q_\theta} = \frac{1-\theta}{q_0} + \frac{\theta}{q_1},$$

with the operator norm  $M_\theta \leq M_0^{1-\theta} M_1^\theta$ .

Hence we derive from (1.2)-(1.3) that

**Proposition 1.1.** *Let  $S(t)$  be the unitary map defined by (St). Then  $S(t)$  is a linear map from  $L^{r'}(\mathbb{R}^d)$  to  $L^r(\mathbb{R}^d)$  for any  $r \in [2, \infty]$  (with  $\frac{1}{r} + \frac{1}{r'} = 1$ ) such that*

$$\|S(t)u_0\|_{L^r(\mathbb{R}^d)} \leq |4\pi t|^{-\frac{d}{2} + \frac{d}{r}} \|u_0\|_{L^{r'}(\mathbb{R}^d)}, \quad \forall t \neq 0. \quad (1.4)$$

### 1.1.3 Symmetries/Invariances

We list here the main symmetries for the Schrödinger equation in (NLS):

- Time/Space translation symmetry: If  $u(t, x)$  solves (NLS), then  $u_{t_0, x_0}(t, x) = u(t - t_0, x - x_0)$ ,  $t_0 \in \mathbb{R}$ ,  $x_0 \in \mathbb{R}^d$  also solves the Schrödinger equation in (NLS);
- Space rotation symmetry: If  $u(t, x)$  solves (NLS), then  $u(t, \Omega x)$ ,  $\Omega \in SO(d)$  also solves the Schrödinger equation in (NLS);
- Phase rotation symmetry: If  $u(t, x)$  solves (NLS), then  $e^{i\omega} u(t, x)$ ,  $\omega \in \mathbb{R}$  also solves the Schrödinger equation in (NLS);

- Time reversal symmetry: If  $u(t, x)$  solves (NLS), then  $\bar{u}(-t, x)$  ( $\bar{u}$  means the complex conjugate of  $u$ ) also solves the Schrödinger equation in (NLS);
- Galilean invariance: If  $u(t, x)$  solves (NLS), then  $e^{i(x \cdot v - |v|^2 t)} u(t, x - 2vt)$ ,  $v \in \mathbb{R}^d$  also solves the Schrödinger equation in (NLS);
- Scaling symmetry: If  $u(t, x)$  solves (NLS), then  $u_\lambda(t, x) = \frac{1}{\lambda^{\frac{d}{p-1}}} u(\frac{t}{\lambda^2}, \frac{x}{\lambda})$ ,  $0 \neq \lambda \in \mathbb{R}$  also solves the Schrödinger equation in (NLS);
- Pseudo-conformal symmetry for the mass critical case  $p = 1 + \frac{4}{d}$ : If  $u(t, x)$  solves (NLS), then  $\frac{e^{i\frac{|x|^2}{4t}}}{t^{\frac{d}{2}}} u(-\frac{1}{t}, \frac{x}{t})$ ,  $\frac{e^{i\frac{|x|^2}{4(1+t)}}}{(1+t)^{\frac{d}{2}}} u(\frac{t}{1+t}, \frac{x}{1+t})$ , etc.  $t > 0$  also solve the Schrödinger equation in (NLS).

Let us focus on the scaling symmetry for a while: Notice also that the scaling includes both linear and nonlinear informations in the nonlinear Schrödinger equation (NLS). Recall that the Sobolev space  $H^s(\mathbb{R}^d)$ ,  $s \in \mathbb{R}$  is defined to be

$$H^s(\mathbb{R}^d) := \{f \in \mathcal{S}'(\mathbb{R}^d) \mid \|f\|_{H^s(\mathbb{R}^d)}^2 := \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} (1 + |\xi|^2)^s |\hat{f}(\xi)|^2 d\xi < \infty\}, \quad (1.5)$$

and we also define the homogeneous Sobolev norm as

$$\|f\|_{\dot{H}^s(\mathbb{R}^d)}^2 := \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |\xi|^{2s} |\hat{f}(\xi)|^2 d\xi. \quad (1.6)$$

Denote the critical exponent

$$s_c = \frac{d}{2} - \frac{2}{p-1}. \quad (1.7)$$

Let the initial data  $u_0 \in H^s(\mathbb{R}^d)$ , then the rescaled initial datum  $u_{0,\lambda}(x) = \frac{1}{\lambda^{\frac{d}{p-1}}} u_0(\frac{x}{\lambda})$ ,  $\lambda > 0$  has  $\dot{H}^s(\mathbb{R}^d)$ -norm as follows

$$\|u_{0,\lambda}\|_{\dot{H}^s(\mathbb{R}^d)} = \lambda^{-s+s_c} \|u_0\|_{\dot{H}^s(\mathbb{R}^d)}.$$

Heuristically, we then divide the regularity exponent  $s$  of the Sobolev space  $H^s$  into three cases:

- $s > s_c$  (subcritical case)  
As  $\lambda \rightarrow \infty$ ,  $\|u_{0,\lambda}\|_{\dot{H}^s(\mathbb{R}^d)} \rightarrow 0$  and if the solution  $u$  exists on the time interval  $[0, T_*]$  then the rescaled solution  $u_\lambda$  exists on the time interval  $[0, \lambda^2 T_*]$  with  $\lambda^2 T_* \rightarrow \infty$ . This is the most favourable situation in well-posedness issue: we can make both the small initial norm and the long time interval at the same time.



- $s = s_c$  (critical case)

It is easy to see that the  $\dot{H}^{s_c}$ -norm is invariant under the scaling:  $\|u_{0,\lambda}\|_{\dot{H}^{s_c}(\mathbb{R}^d)} = \|u_0\|_{\dot{H}^{s_c}(\mathbb{R}^d)}$ , and as  $\lambda \rightarrow \infty$  the rescaled existing time interval is still  $[0, \lambda^2 T_*]$  with  $\lambda^2 T_* \rightarrow \infty$ . This is always a unclear situation.

- $s < s_c$  (supercritical case)

In this case as  $\lambda \rightarrow \infty$ ,  $\|u_{0,\lambda}\|_{\dot{H}^s(\mathbb{R}^d)} \rightarrow \infty$  as  $\lambda^2 T_* \rightarrow \infty$ , that is, the growing norm corresponds to longer time interval. Blowup may happen in this situation.

In particular, we are in the  $L^2$  (mass)-subcritical/critical/supercritical case if

$$0 = s > / = / < s_c, \text{ i.e. } p < / = / > 1 + \frac{4}{d},$$

and we are in the  $H^1$  (energy)-subcritical/critical/supercritical case if

$$1 = s > / = / < s_c, \text{ i.e. } p < / = / > 1 + \frac{4}{d-2}.$$

It seems that we should have well-posedness results in  $L^2$  or  $H^1$  framework when  $p < 1 + \frac{4}{d}$  or  $p < 1 + \frac{4}{d-2}$  and we will indeed prove this in Section 2.

---

[13.10.2017]  
[20.10.2017]

### 1.1.4 Conservation laws

Suppose that  $u(t, x)$  is a smooth and fast decaying solution of the Schrödinger equation in (NLS). We have the following conservation laws a priori:

- Mass conservation law

$$M(u)(t) = \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |u(t, x)|^2 dx = M(u)(0). \quad (1.8)$$

Indeed, we test this Schrödinger equation by  $\bar{u}$  to get

$$i \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} \partial_t u \bar{u} dx + \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} \Delta u \bar{u} dx = \kappa \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |u|^{p+1} dx.$$

We take the imaginary part to obtain (noticing that integration by parts ensures  $\int_{\mathbb{R}^d} \Delta u \bar{u} dx = - \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |\nabla u|^2 dx$ )

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}^d} \text{Re } \partial_t u \bar{u} dx + 0 = 0.$$

Since  $\operatorname{Re} \partial_t u \bar{u} = \frac{1}{2} \partial_t |u|^2$ , we derive (1.8) from

$$\frac{1}{2} \frac{d}{dt} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |u|^2 dx = 0.$$

- Momentum conservation law

$$P_j(u)(t) = \operatorname{Im} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} \bar{u} \partial_{x_j} u dx = P_j(u)(0). \quad (1.9)$$

Indeed, we test the Schrödinger equation by  $\partial_{x_j} \bar{u}$  to get

$$i \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} \partial_t u \partial_{x_j} \bar{u} dx + \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} \Delta u \partial_{x_j} \bar{u} dx = \kappa \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |u|^{p-1} u \partial_{x_j} \bar{u} dx.$$

We take integration by parts to obtain

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} \Delta u \partial_{x_j} \bar{u} dx &= - \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} \nabla u \cdot \partial_{x_j} \nabla \bar{u} dx = \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} \partial_{x_j} \nabla u \cdot \nabla \bar{u} dx \\ &= -i \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} \operatorname{Im} (\nabla u \cdot \partial_{x_j} \nabla \bar{u}) dx, \\ \kappa \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |u|^{p-1} u \partial_{x_j} \bar{u} dx &= -\kappa \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |u|^{p-1} \partial_{x_j} u \bar{u} dx - \underbrace{\kappa \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} \partial_{x_j} |u|^{p-1} |u|^2 dx}_{=0} \\ &= i \kappa \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} \operatorname{Im} (|u|^{p-1} u \partial_{x_j} \bar{u}) dx. \end{aligned}$$

Hence we take the real part to arrive at

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} \operatorname{Im} (\partial_t u \partial_{x_j} \bar{u}) dx = \frac{1}{2} \operatorname{Im} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} (\partial_t u \partial_{x_j} \bar{u} - \partial_t \bar{u} \partial_{x_j} u) dx \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \operatorname{Im} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} (-\partial_t (\partial_{x_j} u) \bar{u} - \partial_t \bar{u} \partial_{x_j} u) dx \text{ by integration by parts,} \\ &= -\frac{1}{2} \frac{d}{dt} P_j(u(t)) \end{aligned}$$

which implies (1.9).

- Energy conservation law

$$E(u)(t) = \frac{1}{2} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |\nabla u|^2 dx + \frac{\kappa}{p+1} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |u|^{p+1} dx = E(u)(0). \quad (1.10)$$

Similar as above, we can test the Schrödinger equation by  $\Delta \bar{u} - \kappa |u|^{p-1} \bar{u}$  and then take the imaginary part to get (1.10).

Indeed in the Hamiltonian formulation,  $E(u)$  is the Hamiltonian of the Hamiltonian flow (NLS). We just formally state here the Hamiltonian formulation for (NLS). Consider the phase space as the vector space of some suitable functions from  $\mathbb{R}^d$  to  $\mathbb{C}$ . Let us be rather fluid in the notion of phase space and e.g. we can take Schwartz function space as phase space when  $p$  is integer. Take the symplectic form  $\omega$  on the phase space such that at the point  $u$  in the phase space, for the two tangent vectors  $f, g$  at  $u$ ,

$$\omega(f, g) = \text{Im} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} f(x) \overline{g(x)} dx.$$

This implies that  $q(x) : u \mapsto \text{Re } u(x)$ ,  $p(x) : u \mapsto \text{Im } u(x)$  are canonically conjugate coordinates (indexed by  $x \in \mathbb{R}^d$ ). Consider the Poisson bracket associated to  $\omega$ :

$$\{G, F\}(u) = \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} \frac{\delta F}{\delta p} \Big|_u(x) \frac{\delta G}{\delta q} \Big|_u(x) - \frac{\delta F}{\delta q} \Big|_u(x) \frac{\delta G}{\delta p} \Big|_u(x) dx.$$

Then for a real-valued function  $H : \mathbb{C} \mapsto \mathbb{R}$ , the associated (Hamiltonian) flow is defined by

$$\partial_t u = \nabla_\omega H(u),$$

where the vector field  $(\nabla_\omega H)$  is defined by

$$\omega(f, \nabla_\omega H) = dH(f),$$

$$dG \Big|_u(f) = \lim_{\varepsilon \rightarrow 0} \frac{G(u + \varepsilon f) - G(u)}{\varepsilon} = \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} \frac{\delta G}{\delta q} \Big|_u(x) \text{Re } f(x) + \frac{\delta G}{\delta p} \Big|_u(x) \text{Im } f(x) dx.$$

Hence for any function  $F$  on the phase space, we deduce that

$$\frac{d}{dt} F(u(t)) = dF|_u(\partial_t u) = dF|_u(\nabla_\omega H) = \{F, H\}(u(t)).$$

Here, we calculate  $\nabla_\omega E$  with  $E$  defined in (1.10):

$$\begin{aligned} \omega(f, \nabla_\omega E) &= \text{Im} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} f(x) \overline{\nabla_\omega E} dx = \text{Re} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} f(x) (i \overline{\nabla_\omega E}) dx, \\ (dE)|_u(f) &= \text{Re} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} \nabla f \cdot \nabla \bar{u} + \kappa |u|^{p-1} f \bar{u} dx = \text{Re} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} f \overline{(-\Delta u + \kappa |u|^{p-1} u)} dx, \end{aligned}$$

that is  $i \nabla_\omega E = -\Delta u + \kappa |u|^{p-1} u$ . Hence the Schrödinger equation (NLS) is exactly the Hamiltonian flow associated to the Hamiltonian  $E(u)$ . Furthermore,  $\{M, E\}(u(t)) = \{P_j, E\}(u(t)) = \{E, E\}(u(t)) = 0$  and hence  $M(u), P_j(u), E(u)$  are conservation laws for (NLS).

We remark that these above conservation laws obviously hold true for smooth and fast decaying solutions for (NLS). Nevertheless they can also hold for less regular solutions by the approximation argument, e.g. the mass conservation law (1.8) will hold for  $L^2$ -subcritical case with  $L^2$  initial data. These conservation laws will help us to get global-in-time well-posedness result, see Subsection 2.2.2 below.

### 1.1.5 Solitary wave

A solitary wave is a solution that travels at a constant velocity without changing its shape. Specially, let  $e^{it}Q(x)$  be a solitary wave of the Schrödinger equation (NLS), with  $Q(x)$  satisfying the elliptic equation

$$\Delta Q - Q = \kappa|Q|^{p-1}Q, \quad \kappa = -1, \quad Q \in H^1(\mathbb{R}^d). \quad (1.11)$$

Then by symmetries in Subsection 1.1.3 we know that the following general solitary wave solution travels along the line  $x = x_0 + 2vt$ :

$$e^{i\lambda^{-2}t + ix \cdot v - i|v|^2t + i\theta} Q_\lambda(x - x_0 - 2vt), \quad \theta \in \mathbb{R}, x_0 \in \mathbb{R}^d, v \in \mathbb{R}^d, 0 \neq \lambda \in \mathbb{R},$$

with  $Q_\lambda(x) = \frac{1}{\lambda^{\frac{2}{p-1}}} Q(\frac{x}{\lambda})$ . We have taken  $\kappa = -1$  the focusing case, otherwise in the defocusing case there exists only trivial solution: We test (1.11) with  $\kappa = 1$  by  $\bar{Q}$  to get

$$0 \geq - \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |\nabla Q|^2 dx = \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} (1 + |Q|^2)|Q|^2 dx \geq 0 \Rightarrow Q = 0 \in H^1(\mathbb{R}^d).$$

Let  $d = 1$ , then (1.11) is an ODE and one has an explicit solution (unique up to translation and sign change)

$$Q(x) = \left( \frac{p+1}{2} \operatorname{sech}^2\left(\frac{p-1}{2}x\right) \right)^{\frac{1}{p-1}} \in H^1(\mathbb{R}^1), \quad \operatorname{sech}(x) = \frac{2}{e^x + e^{-x}}. \quad (1.12)$$

We will see that for any  $d \geq 2$ , in the energy-subcritical case (i.e.  $1 < p < 1 + \frac{4}{d-2}$ ), there exists a unique *positive radial*  $H^1$  solution (up to translation) of (1.11) in Proposition 4.5, Subsection 4.1. This unique solution is called the *ground state* and the corresponding solution  $u(t, x) = e^{it}Q$  of (NLS) is the ground state standing wave and is often called *soliton*. We will show the orbital stability result of the solitons in the mass-subcritical case (i.e.  $1 < p < 1 + \frac{4}{d}$ ) in Subsection 4.3. There are also other solutions (not necessarily positive or radial) than the ground state for (1.11) when  $d \geq 2$  which are called bound states and we will not discuss them in this lecture.

It is easy to see that for any  $r \in [1, \infty]$ , the  $L^r$ -norm of the initial datum  $Q$  is preserved by the solution  $e^{it}Q$ :

$$\|e^{it}Q\|_{L^r(\mathbb{R}^d)} = \|Q\|_{L^r(\mathbb{R}^d)}, \quad \forall t \in \mathbb{R}.$$

This phenomenon is totally different from the linear Schrödinger equation where the estimate (1.4) shows that  $\|S(t)u_0\|_{L^r(\mathbb{R}^d)}$ ,  $r > 2$  vanishes as  $t \rightarrow \infty$ . Hence the existence of the solitary waves describes a balance between the (linear) dispersion and the nonlinearity and they neither decay nor develop singularities.

## 1.2 Completely integrable case

In this section we take  $d = 1$  and  $p = 3$  in the equation of (NLS): the cubic nonlinear Schrödinger equation (by scaling  $u \mapsto \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}u$ )

$$i\partial_t u + u_{xx} = 2\kappa|u|^2u, \quad u|_{t=0} = u_0. \quad (1.13)$$

We are going to consider the defocusing case  $\kappa = 1$  and study this cubic NLS via its Lax-pair formulation. We view  $u$  as the potential in the Lax operator (see (1.21) below) and hope to solve  $u$  by use of the scattering data defined on the real line associated to this Lax operator. We always assume sufficiently decay condition on  $u$  as  $|x| \rightarrow \infty$ .

Let  $\kappa = 1$ . By [Zakharov-Shabat 1973], the cubic nonlinear Schrödinger equation (1.13) can be viewed as the compatibility condition of the two systems

$$\psi_x = \begin{pmatrix} -iz & u \\ \bar{u} & iz \end{pmatrix} \psi := U\psi, \quad (1.14)$$

$$\psi_t = i \begin{pmatrix} -2z^2 - |u|^2 & -2izu + u_x \\ -2iz\bar{u} - \bar{u}_x & 2z^2 + |u|^2 \end{pmatrix} \psi := V\psi, \quad (1.15)$$

where in these two systems  $z$  is a parameter,  $(t, x)$  are space and time variables,  $u$  is some known function and  $\psi : \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}^2$  is the unknown vector. Here the compatibility condition of the above two systems means that

$$\begin{aligned} \psi_{xt} &= (U\psi)_t = U_t\psi + U\psi_t = U_t\psi + UV\psi \\ \text{and } \psi_{tx} &= (V\psi)_x = V_x\psi + V\psi_x = V_x\psi + VU\psi \end{aligned}$$

should be the same, that is,

$$U_t = V_x + [V, U] \text{ with } [V, U] = VU - UV. \quad (1.16)$$

We can check that (1.13) is exactly the compatibility condition (1.16).

We now give the Lax-pair formulation (see (1.19) below) of cubic NLS (1.13). We rewrite the system (1.14) into the form of the spectral problem of the self-adjoint Lax operator  $L$  (with the domain depending on the potential  $u$ , e.g.  $D(L) = H^1(\mathbb{R}) \subset L^2(\mathbb{R})$  if  $u \in L^\infty(\mathbb{R})$ ) as follows

$$L\psi = z\psi, \quad L = \begin{pmatrix} i\partial_x & -iu \\ i\bar{u} & -i\partial_x \end{pmatrix}. \quad (1.17)$$

Then we can replace  $z\psi$  by  $L\psi$  in the system (1.15) to get

$$\begin{aligned} \psi_t = P\psi, \quad P &= 2i \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} L^2 + 2 \begin{pmatrix} 0 & u \\ \bar{u} & 0 \end{pmatrix} L + i \begin{pmatrix} -|u|^2 & u_x \\ -\bar{u}_x & |u|^2 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= i \begin{pmatrix} 2\partial_x^2 - |u|^2 & -u\partial_x - \partial_x u \\ \bar{u}\partial_x + \partial_x \bar{u} & -2\partial_x^2 + |u|^2 \end{pmatrix}. \end{aligned} \quad (1.18)$$

The compatibility condition (1.16), i.e. the cubic nonlinear Schrödinger equation (1.13) equals to the following evolutionary equation

$$L_t = [P, L], \quad (1.19)$$

and the operator pair  $(L, P)$  is called *Lax pair* for (1.13).

The Lax pair  $(L, P)$  is the key to solve (1.13). Formally, thanks to the evolutionary equation (1.19), if  $L\psi = z\psi$  then  $z$  is independent of the time since we derive  $z_t = 0$  from  $(L\psi)_t = (z\psi)_t$ :

$$\begin{aligned} (L\psi)_t &= L_t\psi + L\psi_t = [P, L]\psi + LP\psi = PL\psi, \\ (z\psi)_t &= z_t\psi + z\psi_t = z_t\psi + zP\psi = z_t\psi + PL\psi. \end{aligned}$$

This fact is non trivial since  $L$  depends on  $u(t, x)$  and hence its spectrum should depend on  $t$  generally! More precisely we will indeed consider  $z \in \mathbb{R}$  (the continuous spectrum of the self-adjoint operator  $L$ ) and define the *transmission coefficient*  $T(z)$  and the *reflection coefficient*  $R(z)$  associated to the Lax operator  $L$ . We will see that  $T(z)$  does not depend on time and hence gives infinite many conservation laws for the cubic NLS (1.13). On the other side, the Lax pair (1.19) gives a simple evolutionary equation for the scattering data  $R(t, z)$  associated to  $u(t, x)$ :  $\partial_t R(t, z) = 4iz^2 R(t, z)$ . We will use the direct transform to get the initial scattering data  $R_0(z)$  from the initial data  $u_0(x)$  and then use the inverse scattering transform to get the solution  $u(t, x)$  from the evolved scattering data  $R(t, z)$ . The direct/inverse scattering transforms give an algorithmic way to solve (NLS). This idea

can be compared with the resolution of the linear Schrödinger equation via Fourier and inverse Fourier transform:

$$\begin{aligned} i\partial_t u + u_{xx} &= 0, & u|_{t=0} &= u_0, \\ \Rightarrow i\partial_t \hat{u}(\xi) - \xi^2 \hat{u}(\xi) &= 0, & \hat{u}|_{t=0} &= \hat{u}_0(\xi), \\ \Rightarrow \hat{u}(t, \xi) &= e^{-i\xi^2 t} \hat{u}_0(\xi) \Rightarrow u(t, x) = \mathcal{F}_x^{-1}(\hat{u}). \end{aligned} \quad (1.20)$$

The direct and inverse scattering transform play the same role of Fourier and inverse Fourier transform here, with the scattering data  $R(t, z)$  viewed as the *nonlinear* Fourier transform of  $u(t, x)$ . However the direct and inverse scattering transform are nonlinear and much involved since it is related to the *nonlinear* Schrödinger equation.

---

[20.10.2017]  
[27.10.2017]

### 1.2.1 The direct transform

Let  $z \in \mathbb{R}$ . In the direct transform step, given the function  $u = u(x) \in L^1(\mathbb{R}; \mathbb{C})$ , we consider the ODE system (1.14):

$$\psi_x = \begin{pmatrix} -iz & u \\ \bar{u} & iz \end{pmatrix} \psi, \quad (1.21)$$

where  $x \in \mathbb{R}$  is the space variable and  $\psi : \mathbb{R} \mapsto \mathbb{C}^2$  is the unknown vector.

We propose *reasonable* boundary condition for the system (1.21). As the known function  $u(x)$  decays sufficiently as  $|x| \rightarrow \infty$ ,  $\psi(x)$  can be approximated by the solution of (1.21) when  $u \equiv 0$  at infinity:

$$\psi(x) = c_1 \begin{pmatrix} e^{-izx} \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + c_2 \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ e^{izx} \end{pmatrix} + o(1), \quad |x| \rightarrow \infty, \quad (1.22)$$

where  $c_1, c_2$  are arbitrary constants. Since  $z \in \mathbb{R}$ , these solutions oscillate at infinity. This is what defines  $\mathbb{R}$  as the continuous spectrum for (1.21).

#### Jost solutions

We look for solutions of the initial value problem (1.21)-(1.22) such that

$$j^{-,1}(x; z) = \begin{pmatrix} e^{-izx} \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + o(1) \text{ as } x \rightarrow -\infty,$$

and

$$j^{-,2}(x; z) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ e^{izx} \end{pmatrix} + o(1) \text{ as } x \rightarrow -\infty.$$

Indeed, the renormalised solution  $l^{-,1}(x; z) = e^{izx} j^{-,1}(x; z)$  satisfies the following integral equation

$$l^{-,1}(x; z) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + \int_{-\infty}^x \begin{pmatrix} 0 & u(x_1) \\ e^{2iz(x-x_1)} \bar{u}(x_1) & 0 \end{pmatrix} l^{-,1}(x_1; z) dx_1. \quad (1.23)$$

By iteration we deduce that

$$l^{-,1}(x; z) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} l_n^{-,1}(x; z), \quad l_0^{-,1} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix},$$

$$l_{n+1}^{-,1}(x; z) = \int_{-\infty}^x \begin{pmatrix} 0 & u(x_1) \\ e^{2iz(x-x_1)} \bar{u}(x_1) & 0 \end{pmatrix} l_n^{-,1}(x_1; z) dx_1,$$

that is,

$$l^{-,1}(x; z) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ \int_{-\infty}^x e^{2iz(x-x_1)} \bar{u}(x_1) dx_1 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} \int_{-\infty}^x u(x_2) \int_{-\infty}^{x_2} e^{2iz(x_2-x_1)} \bar{u}(x_1) dx_1 dx_2 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$+ \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ \int_{-\infty}^x e^{2iz(x-x_3)} \bar{u}(x_3) \int_{-\infty}^{x_3} u(x_2) \int_{-\infty}^{x_2} e^{2iz(x_2-x_1)} \bar{u}(x_1) dx_1 dx_2 dx_3 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$+ \begin{pmatrix} \int_{-\infty}^x u(x_4) \int_{-\infty}^{x_4} e^{2iz(x_4-x_3)} \bar{u}(x_3) \int_{-\infty}^{x_3} u(x_2) \int_{-\infty}^{x_2} e^{2iz(x_2-x_1)} \bar{u}(x_1) dx_1 dx_2 dx_3 dx_4 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + \dots$$

We just have to show that the above series converges if  $u \in L^1(\mathbb{R}; \mathbb{C})$ : Let

$$m_k = \int_{-\infty}^{x_k} |u(y)| dy, \quad m = \int_{-\infty}^x |u(y)| dy,$$

then  $dm_k = |u(x_k)| dx_k$  and  $|l^{-,1}(x; z)|$  with  $x, z \in \mathbb{R}$  can be controlled by

$$\left( 1 + \int_0^m \int_0^{m_2} dm_1 dm_2 + \int_0^m \int_0^{m_4} \int_0^{m_3} \int_0^{m_2} dm_1 dm_2 dm_3 dm_4 + \dots \right)$$

$$\left( \int_0^m dm_1 + \int_0^m \int_0^{m_3} \int_0^{m_2} dm_1 dm_2 dm_3 + \dots \right)$$

and hence by

$$\begin{pmatrix} \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{m^{2k}}{(2k)!} \\ \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{m^{2k+1}}{(2k+1)!} \end{pmatrix}$$

which converges since  $m \leq \|u\|_{L^1}$ . The uniqueness result follows similarly by iteration: Let  $l$  be the difference between two solutions satisfying the



above integral equation (1.23) with the boundary condition  $(0, 0)^T$ , then we substitute this integral equation into itself  $k$  times such that  $|l(x; z)| \leq \|l\|_{L^\infty} \frac{\|u\|_{L^1}^k}{k!}$  which vanishes as  $k \rightarrow \infty$ .

These two solutions are linearly independent and form a  $2 \times 2$  fundamental solution matrix (i.e. the matrix whose columns are independent solution vectors):

$$J^-(x; z) = [j^{-,1}(x; z), j^{-,2}(x; z)].$$

with normalization condition

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow -\infty} J^-(x; z) e^{izx\sigma_3} = \mathbb{I}, \quad \sigma_3 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Indeed, we have  $\det(J^-(x; z)) = 1 \neq 0$  for all  $x \in \mathbb{R}$  since

$$\frac{d}{dx} \det(J^-(x; z)) = 0 \text{ by (1.21) and } \det(J^-(x; z)) \rightarrow 1 \text{ as } x \rightarrow -\infty.$$

Similarly we can define Jost solutions  $j^{+,1}(x; z), j^{+,2}(x; z)$  that are normalized in the limit  $x \rightarrow +\infty$  and the associated normalized fundamental solution matrix

$$J^+(x; z) = [j^{+,1}(x; z), j^{+,2}(x; z)], \text{ with } \lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} J^+(x; z) e^{izx\sigma_3} = \mathbb{I}.$$

### Scattering matrix

The two fundamental solution matrices  $J^\pm(x; z)$  both satisfy the  $2 \times 2$  system (1.21):

$$(J^\pm)_x = \begin{pmatrix} -iz & u \\ \bar{u} & iz \end{pmatrix} J^\pm.$$

The columns of both matrices span the complete solution space and hence  $j^{+,1}, j^{+,2}$  can be expressed as the linear combination of  $j^{-,1}, j^{-,2}$  and vice versa. That is, there exists a matrix  $S = S(z)$  such that

$$\begin{aligned} J^+(x; z) &= J^-(x; z)S(z), \quad \det(S(z)) = 1, \quad z \in \mathbb{R}, \\ \text{i.e. } j^{+,1}(x; z) &= s_{11}(z)j^{-,1}(x; z) + s_{21}(z)j^{-,2}(x; z), \\ \text{and } j^{+,2}(x; z) &= s_{12}(z)j^{-,1}(x; z) + s_{22}(z)j^{-,2}(x; z). \end{aligned}$$

This matrix  $S(z)$  is the so-called scattering matrix.

### Transmission/Reflection coefficients

Notice the symmetry in the system (1.21): If  $\psi = \begin{pmatrix} \psi_1 \\ \psi_2 \end{pmatrix}$  solves (1.21), then

$$\tilde{\psi} := \begin{pmatrix} \overline{\psi_2} \\ \overline{\psi_1} \end{pmatrix} = \sigma_1 \overline{\psi}, \quad \sigma_1 = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix},$$

(with  $\bar{f}$  denoting the complex conjugate of  $f$ ) is also a solution of (1.21). Hence the jost solution  $\widetilde{j^{-,1}}(x; z)$  also solves (1.21) with the asymptotic  $\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ e^{izx} \end{pmatrix}$  as  $x \rightarrow -\infty$ . By the unique solvability of the initial value problem (1.21)-(1.22) we know  $j^{-,2}(x; z) = \widetilde{j^{-,1}}(x; z) = \sigma_1 \overline{j^{-,1}}(x; z)$ . Therefore

$$\overline{J^\pm}(x; z) = [\overline{j^{\pm,1}}, \overline{j^{\pm,2}}] = \sigma_1 [j^{\pm,2}, j^{\pm,1}] = \sigma_1 J^\pm(x; z) \sigma_1, \quad z \in \mathbb{R}.$$

Hence the scattering matrix  $S(z) = J^-(x; z)^{-1} J^+(x; z)$  also satisfies

$$\overline{S}(z) = \sigma_1 S(z) \sigma_1, \quad z \in \mathbb{R}.$$

This, together with  $\det(S(z)) = 1$  ensures that there exist two complex-valued functions  $a(z), b(z)$  such that

$$S(z) = \begin{pmatrix} \overline{a(z)} & -\overline{b(z)} \\ -b(z) & a(z) \end{pmatrix}, \quad |a(z)|^2 - |b(z)|^2 = 1, \quad z \in \mathbb{R}. \quad (1.24)$$

The inverse scattering matrix  $S(z)^{-1} = \begin{pmatrix} a(z) & \overline{b(z)} \\ b(z) & \overline{a(z)} \end{pmatrix}$ .

The quantity  $T(z) = 1/a(z)$  is called the transmission coefficient and the quantity  $R(z) = b(z)/a(z)$  is called the reflection coefficient. Here is some explanation: We know from  $J^-(x; z) = J^+(x; z)S(z)^{-1}$  that  $j^{-,1}(x; z) = a(z)j^{+,1}(x; z) + b(z)j^{+,2}(x; z)$  and hence the solution  $a(z)^{-1}j^{-,1}(x; z)$  has the following asymptotics

$$T(z) \begin{pmatrix} e^{-izx} \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \text{ as } x \rightarrow -\infty, \\ \begin{pmatrix} e^{-izx} \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + R(z) \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ e^{izx} \end{pmatrix} \text{ as } x \rightarrow +\infty, \quad z \in \mathbb{R}.$$

If we take  $e^{-izx}$  as the incoming wave from the right to the left, then after the disturbance modelled by the potential  $u(x)$  there is a reflected wave of complex amplitude  $R(z)$  and a transmitted wave of complex amplitude  $T(z)$ .

It is obvious to see that if  $u \equiv 0$  then  $J^-(x; z) = J^+(x; z) = e^{-izx\sigma_3}$  and hence  $S(z) = \mathbb{I}$ ,  $a(z) = 1$ ,  $b(z) = 0$ ,  $T(z) = 1$ ,  $R(z) = 0$ .

### The direct transform

The direct transform for the defocusing NLS is a nonlinear mapping

$$(u \in L^1(\mathbb{R}; \mathbb{C})) \mapsto (R : \mathbb{R} \mapsto \mathbb{C}).$$

The reflection coefficient  $R(z)$  can be viewed as a nonlinear analogue of the Fourier transform of  $u(x)$ . Beals-Coifman (1984') showed that if  $u \in \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R})$  (the Schwartz space), then also  $R \in \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R})$  and  $\sup_{z \in \mathbb{R}} |R(z)| \leq 1$ . It is also interesting to calculate that if  $u = \varepsilon \mathbf{1}_{[-L, L]}$ , then  $R(z) = \hat{u}(z) + O(\varepsilon^2)$  as  $\varepsilon \rightarrow 0$  if we define  $\hat{u}(z) = \int_{\mathbb{R}} e^{-2izx} u(x) dx = \varepsilon \sin(2zL)/z$ .

### 1.2.2 Inverse scattering transform

Take the time  $t$  into account and view  $z \in \mathbb{R}$  as parameter. Let  $u = u(t, x)$  in the system (1.21) satisfy the defocusing cubic NLS (1.13) and  $|u(t, \cdot)|$  decays to zero sufficiently fast for all  $t \in \mathbb{R}$ . Then the reflection coefficient  $R(z) = R(t, z)$  also depends on  $t$  and we will see that  $R(z; t)$  evolves in time (almost) in the same way as does the evolutionary  $\hat{u}(t, \xi)$  for the linear Schrödinger equation (1.20).

#### Time evolution of the fundamental solution matrix

We observe that the matrices

$$W^\pm(t, x; z) = J^\pm(t, x; z) e^{-2iz^2 t \sigma_3}, \quad \sigma_3 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

are simultaneous fundamental solutions of the compatible linear systems (1.14)-(1.15) of the Lax pair. Indeed, let  $W(t, x; z)$  be the simultaneous fundamental solution matrix of the compatible systems (1.14)-(1.15). Since any solution matrix of (1.14) is a linear combination of  $j^{+,1}, j^{+,2}$ , there exists time-dependent (and space-independent) matrix  $C(t; z)$  such that  $W(t, x; z) = J^+(t, x; z) C(t; z)$ . By the system (1.15), we calculate the time derivative of  $C(t; z)$

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{d}{dt} C(t; z) &= \frac{d}{dt} (J^+(t, x; z)^{-1} W(t, x; z)) \\ &= J^+(t, x; z)^{-1} \partial_t W(t, x; z) - J^+(t, x; z)^{-1} \partial_t J^+(t, x; z) J^+(t, x; z)^{-1} W(t, x; z) \\ &= J^+(t, x; z)^{-1} V(t, x; z) J^+(t, x; z) C(t; z) - J^+(t, x; z)^{-1} \partial_t J^+(t, x; z) C(t; z). \end{aligned}$$

Since for all the time  $t$ ,

$$J^+(t, x; z) \rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} e^{-izx} & 0 \\ 0 & e^{izx} \end{pmatrix}, \quad V(t, x; z) \rightarrow -2iz^2 \sigma_3 \text{ as } x \rightarrow +\infty,$$

and  $C(t; z)$  does not depend on  $x$ -variable, we deduce that

$$\frac{d}{dt}C(t; z) = -2iz^2\sigma_3C(t; z),$$

and hence a particular solution can be  $C(t; z) = e^{-2iz^2t\sigma_3}$  and  $W^+(t, x; z) = J^+(t, x; z)e^{-2iz^2t\sigma_3}$  is the fundamental solution of the compatible systems (1.14)-(1.15).

#### Time evolution of the transmission/reflection coefficients

Since  $W^\pm(t, x; z) = J^\pm(t, x; z)e^{-2iz^2t\sigma_3}$  solve (1.15), we deduce

$$\partial_t J^\pm(t, x; z) = V(t, x; z)J^\pm(t, x; z) + 2iz^2J^\pm(t, x; z)\sigma_3.$$

Therefore

$$\begin{aligned} \partial_t(S(t; z)) &= \partial_t(J^-(t, x; z)^{-1}J^+(t, x; z)) \\ &= -J^-(t, x; z)^{-1}\partial_t J^-(t, x; z)S(t; z) + J^-(t, x; z)^{-1}\partial_t J^+(t, x; z) \\ &= 2iz^2[S(t; z); \sigma_3], \end{aligned}$$

that is,

$$\begin{pmatrix} \partial_t \overline{a(t; z)} & -\partial_t \overline{b(t; z)} \\ -\partial_t b(t; z) & \partial_t a(t; z) \end{pmatrix} = 2iz^2 \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \overline{2b(t; z)} \\ -2b(t; z) & 0 \end{pmatrix}.$$

We finally arrive at the time evolution of the transmission and reflection coefficients

$$\begin{aligned} a(t; z) &= a(0; z), \quad b(t; z) = e^{4iz^2t}b(0; z), \\ \text{i.e. } T(t; z) &= T(0; z) \text{ independent of the time,} \\ \text{and } R(t; z) &= e^{4iz^2t}R(0; z) \text{ evolves similarly as (1.20).} \end{aligned} \tag{1.25}$$

#### Inverse scattering transform

We give the following theorem without proof, which offers a way to recover the solution of the Cauchy problem (NLS) with  $\kappa = 1$  from the associated Riemann-Hilbert problem:

**Theorem 1.2.** *Let  $u_0 \in L^1(\mathbb{R}; \mathbb{C})$  with  $R_0 : \mathbb{R} \mapsto \mathbb{C}$  as the initial reflection coefficient. Then the solution of the Cauchy problem for the cubic nonlinear Schrödinger equation (1.13) with  $\kappa = 1$  is*

$$u(t, x) = 2i \lim_{z \rightarrow \infty} z M_{12}(z; t, x),$$

where the matrix  $M(z; t, x)$  is the solution of the following Riemann-Hilbert problem: Find a  $2 \times 2$  matrix  $M(z; t, x)$  such that

- *Analyticity* -  $M(z; t, x)$  is analytic of  $z$  for  $z \in \mathbb{C} \setminus \mathbb{R}$ ;
- *Jump Condition* - The continuous boundary values  $M_{\pm}(z; t, x)$  (from up and below respectively) on the real line  $z \in \mathbb{R}$  are related by

$$M_+(z; t, x) = M_-(z; t, x) \begin{pmatrix} 1 - |R_0(z)|^2 & -e^{-2izx-4iz^2t} \overline{R_0(z)} \\ e^{2izx+4iz^2t} R_0(z) & 1 \end{pmatrix};$$

- *Normalization* -  $\lim_{z \rightarrow \infty} M(z; t, x) = \mathbb{I}$ .

Therefore we can solve the Cauchy problem (1.13) in the defocusing completely integrable case in the following way:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} u_0(x) & \text{-----} & u(t, x) \\ \text{direct transform} \downarrow & & \uparrow \text{inverse scattering transform} \\ R_0(z) & \xrightarrow{\text{ODE}} & R(t, z) \end{array}$$

However, the inverse scattering transform step is rather involved and it is hard to say that this machinery can work easier than other methods. Nevertheless it offers an algorithm to solve (NLS) and we can derive much information from the formulation itself, e.g. asymptotic behaviors of the solutions.

#### Invariant transmission coefficient

We can extend the jost solution  $j^{-1}(x; z)$  to the closed upper half plane, with the asymptotics

$$\begin{pmatrix} e^{-izz} \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + o(1)e^{\text{Im}zx} \text{ as } x \rightarrow -\infty, \quad \begin{pmatrix} T^{-1}e^{-izz} \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + o(1)e^{\text{Im}zx} \text{ as } x \rightarrow \infty.$$

We will focus on the invariant ‘‘transmission coefficient’’  $T^{-1}(z)$  which is a well-defined holomorphic function on the closed upper half plane if  $u(x) \in \mathcal{S}$ . In the defocusing case, it also provides a holomorphic extension of  $T(z)$  with  $|T| \leq 1$ , since there are no zeros of  $T^{-1}(z)$  (corresponding to eigenvalues of the self-adjoint Lax operator) and  $|T| \leq 1$  on  $\mathbb{R}$ ,  $T \rightarrow 1$  at infinity.

If  $u(x) \in \mathcal{S}$ , then we can expand  $\ln T^{-1}(z)$  as  $z \rightarrow \infty$ :

$$\ln T^{-1}(z) = iM(2z)^{-1} - iP(2z)^{-2} + iE(2z)^{-3} + i \sum_{k=4}^{\infty} H_k(2z)^{-k}$$

where  $M = M(u)$ ,  $P = P(u)$ ,  $E = E(u)$  are the conserved mass, momentum, energy defined in (1.8)-(1.9)-(1.10) respectively. By the conservation of  $T(z)$ ,

all the coefficients  $H_k$  in the above expansion are conserved by the cubic NLS flow and hence we derived infinite many conservation laws from the invariant transmission coefficient  $T(z)$ .

Roughly speaking,  $M(u)$ ,  $E(u)$  correspond to the  $L^2$ ,  $H^1$  regularity of the solution  $u$ , then whether or not the  $(2n + 1)$ -th coefficient  $H_{2n+1}$  correspond to its  $H^n$  regularity? We have no idea about it. Nevertheless Koch-Tataru (2016') (see also Killip-Visan-Zhang (2017')) succeed in reformulating the new conserved energies  $E_s(u)$  from  $\ln T^{-1}(z)$ , which correspond to  $H^s$ -norms of the solution of the one dimensional cubic nonlinear focusing/defocusing Schrödinger equation, for any  $s > -\frac{1}{2}$ ! We point out that the invariant “transmission coefficient”  $T^{-1}(z)$  is a well-defined holomorphic function on the open upper half plane (not necessarily on the real axis) if  $u \in H^s(\mathbb{R})$ ,  $s > -\frac{1}{2}$ .

[27.10.2017]

[03.11.2017]

## 2 Wellposedness

**Definition 2.1** (LWP & GWP). *The Cauchy problem (NLS)*

$$\begin{cases} i\partial_t u + \Delta u = \kappa|u|^{p-1}u, \\ u|_{t=0} = u_0(x), \end{cases}$$

is said to be locally well-posed LWP in  $H^s(\mathbb{R}^d)$  if for any initial data  $u_0 \in H^s(\mathbb{R}^d)$ , there exists a positive time  $T > 0$  and a unique solution  $u \in C([-T, T]; H^s(\mathbb{R}^d))$  of (NLS) such that there exists a neighbourhood  $U$  of  $u_0$  in  $H^s(\mathbb{R}^d)$  and the flow map

$$\Phi : U \mapsto H^s(\mathbb{R}^d), \quad u_0 \mapsto u(t, \cdot)$$

is continuous for any  $t \in (-T, T)$ .

We say that (NLS) is globally well-posedness GWP in  $H^s(\mathbb{R}^d)$  if the above holds on any time interval  $[-T, T]$ ,  $T > 0$ .

Recall the famous Hadamard’s example of the ill-posed Cauchy problem for the Laplace equation:

$$\begin{cases} v_{tt} + v_{xx} = 0, \\ v|_{t=0} = 0, \quad v_t|_{t=0} = f(x). \end{cases}$$

Let we take the initial data sequence

$$(v, v_t)|_{t=0} = (0, f_n) = (0, e^{-\sqrt{n}} n \sin(nx)) \rightarrow 0 \text{ as } n \rightarrow \infty, \text{ in any } C_b^k(\mathbb{R}), k \in \mathbb{N}.$$

Then there exists a unique solution sequence

$$v_n(t, x) = e^{-\sqrt{n}} \sin(nx) \operatorname{sh}(nt),$$

such that for any positive time  $t_0 > 0$ , the solution sequence evaluated at  $t_0$

$$v_n(t_0, x) = e^{-\sqrt{n}} \sin(nx) \operatorname{sh}(nt_0) \rightarrow \infty \text{ as } n \rightarrow \infty, \text{ in any } C_b^k(\mathbb{R}).$$

Hence the flow map  $(v, v_t)(0, \cdot) \mapsto v(t, \cdot)$  is not continuous in  $C_b^k(\mathbb{R})$  for any  $t > 0$ . The above Cauchy problem for the Laplace equation is ill-posed in  $C_b^k(\mathbb{R})$  for any  $k \in \mathbb{N}$ .

We will show the well-posedness results in the subcritical cases for (NLS) in this section. Recalling the Duhamel formula (Duhamel), we would like to apply the fixed point theorem to show the unique existence of the solution  $u \in X_T \subset C([-T, T]; H^s(\mathbb{R}^d))$ . The choice of the functional space  $X_T$  is crucial and we have to make sure that the linear map  $u_0 \mapsto S(t)u_0$  is from  $H^s(\mathbb{R}^d)$  to  $X_T$  while the (nonlinear) map  $u \mapsto \int_0^t S(t-t')(f(u)(t')) dt'$ ,  $f(u) = \kappa|u|^{p-1}u$  is from  $X_T$  to  $X_T$ . Finally we can choose the time  $T$  small enough such that these maps are contraction mappings and hence the fixed point theorem works. The mass/energy conservation laws then imply GWP in the  $L^2/H^1$  framework respectively.

## 2.1 Strichartz estimates

Recall Proposition 1.1 that the Schrödinger group  $S(t)$  maps  $L^{r'}(\mathbb{R}^d)$  to  $L^r(\mathbb{R}^d)$ ,  $r \geq 2$  with the operator norm  $|4\pi t|^{-\left(\frac{d}{2}-\frac{d}{r}\right)}$ . It is also obvious from the definition of  $S(t)$ :  $\widehat{S(t)g}(\xi) = e^{-it|\xi|^2} \widehat{g}(\xi)$  and the definition of  $H^s$ -norm (1.5) that

$$\|S(t)g\|_{H^s(\mathbb{R}^d)} = \|g\|_{H^s(\mathbb{R}^d)}, \quad \forall s \in \mathbb{R}.$$

We remark that  $S(t)$  is NOT a map

- from  $L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)$  to  $L^r(\mathbb{R}^d)$  or from  $L^r(\mathbb{R}^d)$  to  $L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)$  for  $r \neq 2$ , since otherwise for  $g \in L^2, g \notin L^r$ ,  $\|g\|_{L^r} = \|S(t)(S(-t)g)\|_{L^r} \leq C\|S(-t)g\|_{L^2} = C\|g\|_{L^2}$  and this is a contradiction to  $g \notin L^r$ , or for  $g \in L^r, g \notin L^2$ ,  $\|g\|_{L^2} = \|S(t)g\|_{L^2} \leq C\|g\|_{L^r}$  and this is also a contradiction;
- from  $L^r(\mathbb{R}^d)$  to  $L^{r'}(\mathbb{R}^d)$  for  $r \neq 2$ , since otherwise for  $r > 2$ , for  $g \in L^{r'}, g \notin L^r$ , if  $S(t)$  maps from  $L^r(\mathbb{R}^d)$  to  $L^{r'}(\mathbb{R}^d)$  then  $\|g\|_{L^r} = \|S(t)(S(-t)g)\|_{L^r} \leq C\|S(-t)g\|_{L^r} \leq C\|g\|_{L^{r'}}$  and if  $S(t)$  maps from  $L^{r'}(\mathbb{R}^d)$  to  $L^r(\mathbb{R}^d)$  then

$$\begin{aligned} \|g\|_{L^r} &= \sup_{\|h\|_{L^{r'}=1}} |\langle g, h \rangle_{L^2}| = \sup_{\|h\|_{L^{r'}=1}} |\langle S(t)g, S(t)h \rangle_{L^2}| \\ &\leq \sup_{\|h\|_{L^{r'}=1}} \|S(t)g\|_{L^r} \|S(t)h\|_{L^{r'}} \leq C \sup_{\|h\|_{L^{r'}=1}} \|g\|_{L^{r'}} \|h\|_{L^{r'}} = C \|g\|_{L^{r'}}; \end{aligned}$$

This means that there is no  $L^p$ -boundedness property ( $p \neq 2$ ) for unitary Schrödinger group  $S(t) = e^{it\Delta}$  as for heat semigroup  $e^{t\Delta}$  ( $t > 0$ ):

$$e^{t\Delta}f = A_t * f, \quad A_t = (4\pi t)^{-\frac{d}{2}} e^{-i|\cdot|^2/4t} \in L^1(\mathbb{R}^d)$$

$$\text{such that } \|e^{t\Delta}f\|_{L^r} \leq \|A_t\|_{L^1} \|f\|_{L^r} \leq C\|f\|_{L^r}, \quad \forall r \in [1, \infty], \forall t > 0.$$

- from  $L^r(\mathbb{R}^d)$  to  $L^{r_1}(\mathbb{R}^d)$  for any  $r > 2$ : Generally if  $\|g * \varphi\|_{L^{r_1}} \leq C\|g\|_{L^r}$  for all  $g \in L^r$  and  $\varphi \neq 0$ , then  $r_1 \geq r$  and on the other side, if  $S(t)$  is from  $L^r$  to some  $L^{r_1}$  with  $r_1 \neq r'$ , then by interpolation  $S(t)$  is from  $L^2$  to  $L^{r_2}$  with  $r_2 \neq 2$  which can not hold;
- from  $H^s(\mathbb{R}^d)$  to  $H^{s'}(\mathbb{R}^d)$  for  $s' > s$ , since otherwise for  $g \in H^s, g \notin H^{s'}$ ,  $\|g\|_{H^{s'}} = \|S(t)g\|_{H^{s'}} \leq C\|g\|_{H^s}$ . This means that there is no smoothing effect for  $S(t) = e^{it\Delta}$  in Sobolev spaces as the heat semigroup  $e^{t\Delta}$ :

$$\begin{aligned} \|e^{t\Delta}g\|_{H^{s'}}^2 &= \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} (1 + |\xi|^2)^{s'} e^{-2t|\xi|^2} |\hat{g}(\xi)|^2 d\xi \\ &= \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} (1 + |\xi|^2)^s \underbrace{\left( (1 + |\xi|^2)^{s'-s} e^{-2t|\xi|^2} \right)}_{\text{uniformly bounded in } \xi \text{ if } t>0} |\hat{g}(\xi)|^2 d\xi \\ &\leq C(t)\|g\|_{H^s}^2. \end{aligned}$$

We will show more estimates for  $S(t)$  in this subsection, namely the famous Strichartz estimates.

**Theorem 2.1.** *[Strichartz estimates for Schrödinger] Let  $(q, r)$  be admissible exponent pair, i.e.*

$$\frac{2}{q} + \frac{d}{r} = \frac{d}{2}, \quad 2 \leq q, r \leq \infty, \quad (q, r, d) \neq (2, \infty, 2). \quad (2.26)$$

Then for any admissible exponent pairs  $(q, r), (\tilde{q}, \tilde{r})$ , we have the following homogeneous Strichartz estimate (for the solution  $S(t)u_0$  of the homogeneous problem  $i\partial_t u + \Delta u = 0, u|_{t=0} = u_0$ )

$$\|S(t)u_0\|_{L_t^q L_x^r(\mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^d)} \leq C(q, r, d)\|u_0\|_{L_x^2(\mathbb{R}^d)}, \quad (2.27)$$

and the inhomogeneous Strichartz estimate (for the solution  $\int_0^t S(t-t')f(t') dt'$  of the inhomogeneous problem  $i\partial_t u + \Delta u = f, u|_{t=0} = 0$ )

$$\left\| \int_0^t S(t-t')f(t') dt' \right\|_{L_t^q L_x^r(\mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^d)} \leq C(q, r, \tilde{q}, \tilde{r}, d)\|f\|_{L_t^{\tilde{q}} L_x^{\tilde{r}}(\mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^d)}, \quad (2.28)$$



where  $\frac{1}{q} + \frac{1}{q'} = 1$  and the space-time norm  $\|\cdot\|_{L_t^q L_x^r(\mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^d)}$  is defined to be

$$\|g\|_{L_t^q L_x^r(\mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^d)} = \left\| \|g(t, \cdot)\|_{L_x^r(\mathbb{R}^d)} \right\|_{L_t^q(\mathbb{R})}.$$

In the above the time definition domain  $\mathbb{R}$  can be replaced by any time interval  $[-T, T]$ ,  $T > 0$ .

**Remark 2.1.** • By virtue of (2.27), if  $u_0 \in L^2$ , then  $S(t)u_0 \in L^r$  with

$$2 \leq r \leq \infty \text{ if } d = 1, \quad 2 \leq r < \infty \text{ if } d = 2, \quad 2 \leq r \leq \frac{2d}{d-2} \text{ if } d \geq 3,$$

for almost all  $t \in \mathbb{R}$  and the norm  $\|S(t)u_0\|_{L^r}$ ,  $r > 2$  decays faster than  $|t|^{-\frac{1}{q}}$  for almost all the time. This indicates the smooth and decay effects of  $S(t)$ . On the other side we know that there exists  $u_0 \in L^2$  and  $t \in \mathbb{R}$  such that  $S(t)u_0 \notin L^r$  since the operator  $S(t)$  is not a map from  $L^2$  to  $L^r$ .

- There are infinite many admissible exponent pairs and we can always have the trivial case  $(q, r) = (\infty, 2)$  and the particular case  $q = r = 2(d+2)/d$ . If  $d = 1$ , then  $q \geq 4$  and

$$\|S(t)u_0\|_{L_t^4 L_x^\infty(\mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R})} + \|S(t)u_0\|_{L_{t,x}^6(\mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R})} \leq C \|u_0\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R})}.$$

- The equality for the admissible exponent paris can be seen as follows: Let  $u$  be a solution of the homogeneous linear Schrödinger equation, then the rescaled solution  $u_\lambda(t, x) = u(\lambda^2 t, \lambda x)$  with rescaled initial data  $u_{0,\lambda} = u(\lambda x)$ ,  $\lambda > 0$  such that

$$\|u_\lambda\|_{L_t^q L_x^r(\mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^d)} = \lambda^{-\left(\frac{2}{q} + \frac{d}{r}\right)} \|u\|_{L_t^q L_x^r(\mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^d)}, \quad \|u_{0,\lambda}\|_{L_x^2(\mathbb{R}^d)} = \lambda^{-\frac{d}{2}} \|u_0\|_{L_x^2(\mathbb{R}^d)},$$

also solves the linear Schrödinger equation. If (2.27) holds for  $u$ , then it also holds for  $u_\lambda$  for any  $\lambda > 0$  and the only possibility is  $\frac{2}{q} + \frac{d}{r} = \frac{d}{2}$ .

**Proof. Step 1 From  $L_t^{q'} L_x^{r'}$  to  $L_t^q L_x^r$  for  $2 < q < \infty$**

By use of the estimate (1.4), we know for any  $-\infty \leq t_1 < t_2 \leq \infty$

$$\begin{aligned} \left\| \int_{t_1}^{t_2} S(t-t') f(t') dt' \right\|_{L_t^q L_x^r(\mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^d)} &\leq \left\| \int_{t_1}^{t_2} (4\pi|t-t'|)^{-\left(\frac{d}{2} - \frac{d}{r}\right)} \|f(t')\|_{L_x^{r'}(\mathbb{R}^d)} dt' \right\|_{L_t^q(\mathbb{R})} \\ &\leq \left\| \int_{\mathbb{R}} (4\pi|t-t'|)^{-\frac{2}{q}} \|f(t')\|_{L_x^{r'}(\mathbb{R}^d)} dt' \right\|_{L_t^q(\mathbb{R})}. \end{aligned}$$

By the Hardy-Littlewood-Sobolev inequality

$$\begin{aligned} \|g * |\cdot|^{-\alpha}\|_{L^q(\mathbb{R}^n)} &\leq C(p, q, \alpha, n) \|g\|_{L^m(\mathbb{R}^n)}, \\ 1 + \frac{1}{q} &= \frac{1}{m} + \frac{\alpha}{n}, \quad 0 < \alpha < n, \quad 1 < m < q < \infty, \end{aligned}$$

with

$$n = 1, \quad \alpha = \frac{d}{2} - \frac{d}{r} = \frac{2}{q}, \quad m = q', \quad (2 < q < \infty),$$

we derive from the above inequality that for any  $-\infty \leq t_1 < t_2 \leq \infty$  ( $t_1 < t_2$  may be any two functions of  $t$ )

$$\left\| \int_{t_1}^{t_2} S(t-t')f(t') dt' \right\|_{L_t^q L_x^r(\mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^d)} \leq C(q, r, d) \|f\|_{L_t^{q'} L_x^{r'}(\mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^d)}.$$

**Step 2 From  $L_t^{q'} L_x^{r'}$  to  $L_t^\infty L_x^2$  for  $2 < q < \infty$**

We calculate for any  $t \in \mathbb{R}$ ,  $-\infty \leq t_1 < t_2 \leq \infty$

$$\begin{aligned} \left\| \int_{t_1}^{t_2} S(t-t')f(t') dt' \right\|_{L_x^2(\mathbb{R}^d)}^2 &= \left\langle \int_{t_1}^{t_2} S(t-t')f(t') dt', \int_{t_1}^{t_2} S(t-t'')f(t'') dt'' \right\rangle_{L_x^2(\mathbb{R}^d)} \\ &= \int_{t_1}^{t_2} \int_{t_1}^{t_2} \langle S(t-t')f(t'), S(t-t'')f(t'') \rangle_{L_x^2(\mathbb{R}^d)} dt' dt'' \\ &= \int_{t_1}^{t_2} \int_{t_1}^{t_2} \langle f(t'), S(t'-t'')f(t'') \rangle_{L_x^2(\mathbb{R}^d)} dt' dt'' \\ &= \int_{t_1}^{t_2} \left\langle f(t'), \int_{t_1}^{t_2} S(t'-t'')f(t'') dt'' \right\rangle_{L_x^2(\mathbb{R}^d)} dt' \\ &\leq \int_{\mathbb{R}} \|f(t')\|_{L_x^{r'}(\mathbb{R}^d)} \int_{\mathbb{R}} |4\pi(t'-t'')|^{-\frac{2}{q}} \|f(t'')\|_{L_x^{r'}(\mathbb{R}^d)} dt'' dt' \text{ by (1.4)} \\ &\leq C \|f\|_{L_t^{q'} L_x^{r'}(\mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^d)}^2 \text{ by Hardy-Littlewood-Sobolev inequality.} \end{aligned}$$

**Step 3 Proof of (2.27) and from  $L_t^1 L_x^2$  to  $L_t^q L_x^r$  by duality**

By duality, we derive (2.27) by Step 2

$$\begin{aligned} \|S(t)u_0\|_{L_t^q L_x^r(\mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^d)} &= \sup \|g\|_{L_t^{q'} L_x^{r'}(\mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^d)} \leq 1 \left| \int_{\mathbb{R}} \langle S(t)u_0, g(t) \rangle_{L_x^2(\mathbb{R}^d)} dt \right| \\ &= \sup \|g\|_{L_t^{q'} L_x^{r'}(\mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^d)} \leq 1 \left| \int_{\mathbb{R}} \langle u_0, S(-t)g(t) \rangle_{L_x^2(\mathbb{R}^d)} dt \right| \\ &\leq \sup \|g\|_{L_t^{q'} L_x^{r'}(\mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^d)} \leq 1 \|u_0\|_{L_x^2(\mathbb{R}^d)} \left\| \int_{\mathbb{R}} S(0-t')g(t') dt' \right\|_{L^2} \\ &\leq C \|u_0\|_{L_x^2(\mathbb{R}^d)} \text{ by Step 2.} \end{aligned}$$

Similarly, we can show for any  $-\infty \leq t_1 < t_2 \leq \infty$ ,

$$\begin{aligned}
& \left\| \int_{t_1}^{t_2} S(t-t')f(t') dt' \right\|_{L_t^q L_x^r(\mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^d)} \\
&= \sup_{\|g\|_{L_t^{q'} L_x^{r'}(\mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^d)} \leq 1} \left| \int_{\mathbb{R}} \left\langle \int_{t_1}^{t_2} S(t-t')f(t') dt', g(t) \right\rangle_{L_x^2(\mathbb{R}^d)} dt \right| \\
&= \sup_{\|g\|_{L_t^{q'} L_x^{r'}(\mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^d)} \leq 1} \left| \int_{t_1}^{t_2} \left\langle f(t'), \int_{\mathbb{R}} S(t'-t)g(t) dt \right\rangle_{L_x^2(\mathbb{R}^d)} dt' \right| \\
&\leq C \|f\|_{L_t^1 L_x^2(\mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^d)} \text{ by Step 2.}
\end{aligned}$$

If  $(t_1, t_2) = (0, t)$ , then we just take the integral intervals  $(0, \infty)$  and  $(t', \infty)$  for the variables  $t'$  and  $t$  respectively.

#### Step 4 Proof of (2.28) by interpolation

We have shown in Step 1 and Step 2 that the linear operator

$$f \mapsto \int_0^t S(t-t')f(t')dt'$$

is bounded from  $L_t^{\tilde{q}'} L_x^{\tilde{r}'}$  to  $L_t^{\tilde{q}} L_x^{\tilde{r}}$  and from  $L_t^{\tilde{q}'} L_x^{\tilde{r}'}$  to  $L_t^\infty L_x^2$ . By the log-convexity of  $L^p$ -norms,

$$\|g\|_{L^{p_\theta}} \leq \|g\|_{L^{p_0}}^{1-\theta} \|g\|_{L^{p_1}}^\theta, \text{ with } \frac{1}{p_\theta} = \frac{1-\theta}{p_0} + \frac{\theta}{p_1},$$

the above operator is bounded from  $L_t^{\tilde{q}'} L_x^{\tilde{r}'}$  to  $L_t^q L_x^r$  if  $\tilde{q} \leq q \leq \infty$ .

Similarly we have shown in Step 1 and Step 3 that the above linear operator is bounded from  $L_t^{\tilde{q}'} L_x^{\tilde{r}'}$  to  $L_t^q L_x^r$  and from  $L_t^1 L_x^2$  to  $L_t^q L_x^r$  and hence from  $L_t^{\tilde{q}'} L_x^{\tilde{r}'}$  to  $L_t^q L_x^r$  if  $1 \leq \tilde{q}' \leq q'$ .

These two cases complete the estimate (2.28) for  $2 < q \leq \infty$ .

**Step 5 Endpoint case  $q = 2, r = \frac{2d}{d-2}$  for  $d \geq 3$ :** See [Keel-Tao 1998].  $\square$

## 2.2 $L^2$ theory

### 2.2.1 Local well-posedness in $L^2$

**Theorem 2.2.** [LWP in  $L^2$ ] *Let  $p$  be an  $L^2$ -subcritical exponent, i.e.  $1 < p < 1 + \frac{4}{d}$ . Let  $\kappa = \pm 1$ . Let  $u_0 \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)$ .*

*Then the Cauchy problem (NLS) is locally well-posed LWP in  $L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)$  in the following sense: There exist a positive time  $T > 0$  depending on  $\|u_0\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)}, p, d$ , and a unique solution  $u = u(t, x)$  defined on the time interval*

$[-T, T]$  such that

$$u \in X_T := \left\{ u \in C([-T, T]; L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)) \mid u \in L^q([-T, T]; L^{p+1}(\mathbb{R}^d)) \right\}$$

with admissible exponent pair  $(q, p+1)$  i.e.  $\frac{2}{q} + \frac{d}{p+1} = \frac{d}{2}$ ,  $2 \leq q \leq \infty$ ,

and there exists a neighborhood  $U$  of  $u_0$  in  $L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)$  such that

$$\Phi : U \mapsto X_{T'}, \quad u_0 \mapsto u \text{ is Lipschitz continuous for any } T' < T.$$

---

[03.11.2017]  
[10.11.2017]

*Proof.* We solve the integral equation (Duhamel) by searching for the fixed point of the mapping

$$\Psi : u \mapsto \Psi(u) = S(t)u_0 - i\kappa \int_0^t S(t-t')(|u(t')|^{p-1}u(t'))dt' \quad (2.29)$$

in the ball of the functional space  $X_T$  as

$$X_T(R) := \left\{ u \in X_T \mid \|u\|_{[-T, T]} := \|u\|_{L^\infty([-T, T]; L^2(\mathbb{R}^d))} + \|u\|_{L^q([-T, T]; L^{p+1}(\mathbb{R}^d))} \leq R \right\}$$

with  $R, T$  to be determined later. We will use the Banach fixed-point theorem (contraction mapping theorem) in the complete metric space  $(X_T(R), \|\cdot\|_{[-T, T]})$ , and we shall prove that

- $\Psi$  is a well-defined map in  $X_T(R)$  with appropriately chosen  $R, T$ ;
- $\Psi$  is a contraction map in  $X_T(R)$  for some small enough  $T$ .

Finally we conclude that there is a unique fixed point of  $\Psi$  and the flow map  $\Psi : u_0 \mapsto u$  is Lipschitzian continuous from a neighborhood  $U \subset L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)$  of  $u_0$  to  $X_T(R)$ .

In the following  $C$  will denote some constant depending on  $p, d$  which may vary from line to line.

**Step 1 Well-definedness of the map  $\Psi$  in  $X_T(R)$**

By Strichartz estimates in Theorem 2.1, we deduce that

$$\|S(t)u_0\|_{[-T, T]} \leq C(p, d)\|u_0\|_{L_x^2},$$

and

$$\begin{aligned}
\|\Psi(u) - S(t)u_0\|_{[-T,T]} &\leq C(p, d) \| |u|^{p-1}u \|_{L^{q'}([-T,T]; L^{(p+1)'(\mathbb{R}^d)})} \\
&\leq C \left( \int_{-T}^T \| |u|^{p-1}u \|_{L^{\frac{p+1}{p}}(\mathbb{R}^d)}^{q'} dt \right)^{\frac{1}{q'}} \\
&= C \left( \int_{-T}^T \| u \|_{L^{p+1}(\mathbb{R}^d)}^{pq'} dt \right)^{\frac{1}{q'}}.
\end{aligned}$$

Since  $1 < p < 1 + \frac{4}{d}$ , we use Hölder's inequality  $\|fg\|_{L^1} \leq \|f\|_{L^{\frac{q}{pq'}}} \|g\|_{L^{(1-\frac{pq'}{q})^{-1}}}$  to deduce

$$\begin{aligned}
\|\Psi(u) - S(t)u_0\|_{[-T,T]} &\leq C \left( \int_{-T}^T \| u \|_{L^{p+1}(\mathbb{R}^d)}^q dt \right)^{\frac{p}{q}} T^\theta \leq C \|u\|_{[-T,T]}^p T^\theta, \\
\text{with } \theta &= \frac{1}{q'} \left( 1 - \frac{pq'}{q} \right) = \frac{1}{q'} - \frac{p}{q} = \frac{d}{4} \left( 1 + \frac{4}{d} - p \right) > 0.
\end{aligned}$$

We choose  $R = 4C \|u_0\|_{L_x^2}$  and  $T \leq T_1$  sufficiently small such that

$$\begin{aligned}
CR^p(T_1)^\theta &= \frac{1}{4}R \text{ i.e. } T_1 = \left( \frac{R^{1-p}}{4C} \right)^{\frac{1}{\theta}} = (4C)^{-\frac{p}{\theta}} \|u_0\|_{L_x^2}^\beta \\
\text{with } \beta &= \frac{4(1-p)}{d(1 + \frac{4}{d} - p)} < 0,
\end{aligned}$$

and hence

$$\|\Psi(u)\|_{[-T,T]} \leq \frac{1}{4}R + \frac{1}{4}R \leq R \text{ if } \|u\|_{[-T,T]} \leq R,$$

and  $S(t)u_0, \Psi(u) - S(t)u_0$  are continuous in  $L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)$ .

### Step 2 Contraction map $\Psi$

Let  $u, v \in X_T(R)$  and we calculate by Strichartz estimate

$$\begin{aligned}
\|\Psi(u) - \Psi(v)\|_{[-T,T]} &= \left\| \int_0^t S(t-t') \left( |u(t')|^{p-1}u(t') - |v(t')|^{p-1}v(t') \right) dt' \right\|_{[-T,T]} \\
&\leq C \left\| |u|^{p-1}u - |v|^{p-1}v \right\|_{L^{q'}([-T,T]; L^{(p+1)'(\mathbb{R}^d)})}.
\end{aligned}$$

Since  $\||u|^{p-1}u - |v|^{p-1}v\| \leq C(|u|^{p-1} + |v|^{p-1})|u - v|$ , we proceed as in Step 1 to obtain

$$\begin{aligned}
\|\Psi(u) - \Psi(v)\|_{[-T,T]} &\leq C \left( \int_{-T}^T (\|u\|_{L_x^{p+1}}^{(p-1)q'} + \|v\|_{L_x^{p+1}}^{(p-1)q'}) \|u - v\|_{L_x^{q'}} dt \right)^{\frac{1}{q'}} \\
&\leq C (\|u\|_{L^q([-T,T]; L_x^{p+1})}^{p-1} + \|v\|_{L^q([-T,T]; L_x^{p+1})}^{p-1}) \|u - v\|_{L^q([-T,T]; L_x^{p+1})} T^\theta \\
&\leq CR^{p-1}T^\theta \|u - v\|_{[-T,T]}.
\end{aligned}$$

Hence we choose  $T \leq T_2$  sufficiently small such that (with a possibly larger  $C_2$  as above)

$$C_2 R^{p-1} (T_2)^\theta = \frac{1}{4} \text{ i.e. } T_2 = (4C_2)^{-\frac{1}{\theta}} (4C)^{-\frac{p-1}{\theta}} \|u_0\|_{L_x^2}^\beta,$$

and the map  $\Psi$  is a contraction map on  $X_T(R)$  if  $T \leq T_1, T_2$ .

### Step 3 Conclusion

By Banach fixed point theorem, there exists a unique fixed point  $u \in X_T(R)$  of the map  $\Psi$  and hence  $u \in X_T(R)$  solves uniquely (NLS) with  $R = C\|u_0\|_{L_x^2}$ ,  $T = C^{-1}\|u_0\|_{L_x^2}^\beta$  for some large enough constant  $C$ .

It rests to show the Lipschitz continuity of the flow map  $\Phi : U \mapsto X_{T'}(R)$  via  $u_0 \mapsto u$ , for some neighborhood  $U = \{v_0 \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^d) \mid \|u_0 - v_0\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)} < \|u_0\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)}\}$  and for all  $T' < T$ . Let  $u_0, v_0 \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)$  and we calculate

$$\begin{aligned} \Phi(u_0) - \Phi(v_0) &= S(t)(u_0 - v_0) \\ &\quad - i\kappa \int_0^t S(t-t') \left( |\Phi(u_0)(t')|^{p-1} \Phi(u_0)(t') - |\Phi(v_0)(t')|^{p-1} \Phi(v_0)(t') \right) dt'. \end{aligned}$$

As in Step 2, we derive that

$$\begin{aligned} \|\Phi(u_0) - \Phi(v_0)\|_{[0,T]} &\leq C\|u_0 - v_0\|_{L_x^2} \\ &\quad + C(\|\Phi(u_0)\|_{[0,T]}^{p-1} + \|\Phi(v_0)\|_{[0,T]}^{p-1}) \|\Phi(u_0) - \Phi(v_0)\|_{[0,T]} T^\theta \\ &\leq C\|u_0 - v_0\|_{L_x^2} + C(\|u_0\|_{L_x^2}^{p-1} + \|v_0\|_{L_x^2}^{p-1}) \|\Phi(u_0) - \Phi(v_0)\|_{[0,T]} T^\theta. \end{aligned}$$

If  $u_0, v_0 \in U$ , then  $\|v_0\|_{L_x^2} < 2\|u_0\|_{L_x^2}$ . Hence if we take  $T = C^{-1}\|u_0\|_{L_x^2}^\beta$  for a possibly larger  $C$  then

$$\|\Phi(u_0) - \Phi(v_0)\|_{[0,T]} \leq C\|u_0 - v_0\|_{L_x^2}.$$

□

**Remark 2.2.** *The nonlinear Schrödinger equation (NLS) holds in the distribution sense: Recalling the Duhamel formulation (Duhamel), it suffices to show the well-definedness of the nonlinearity when  $u \in X_T$*

$$|u|^{p-1}u \in L^{\frac{q}{p}}([-T, T]; L^{\frac{p+1}{p}}(\mathbb{R}^d)), \quad \frac{q}{p} > q' \text{ if } p < 1 + \frac{4}{d}.$$

Furthermore,  $|u|^{p-1}u \in L^{\frac{q}{p}}([-T, T]; H^{-1}(\mathbb{R}^d))$ , by Sobolev embedding  $H^1(\mathbb{R}^d) \hookrightarrow L^{p+1}(\mathbb{R}^d) = (L^{\frac{p+1}{p}}(\mathbb{R}^d))'$ ,  $1 \geq \frac{d}{2} - \frac{d}{p+1} = \frac{2}{q}$ . Hence the equation (NLS) makes sense in  $L^{q'}([-T, T]; H^{-2}(\mathbb{R}^d))$ .

## 2.2.2 Global well-posedness in $L^2$

**Theorem 2.3.** *[GWP in  $L^2$ ] Let  $1 < p < 1 + \frac{4}{d}$ . The solution obtained in Theorem 2.2 exists globally in time such that*

$$u \in C(\mathbb{R}; L_x^2) \cap L_{\text{loc}}^q(\mathbb{R}; L_x^p) \text{ and } \|u(t, \cdot)\|_{L_x^2} = \|u_0\|_{L_x^2}, \forall t \in \mathbb{R}. \quad (2.30)$$

*Proof.* We show the conservation of the  $L_x^2$ -norm, i.e. the mass conservation law (1.8), rigorously for  $u \in X_T$  satisfying (NLS).

### Step 1 Regularization

Take  $\varphi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^d)$  with  $\varphi \geq 0$ ,  $\int_{\mathbb{R}^d} \varphi(x) dx = 1$ . Denote  $\varphi_n(x) = n^d \varphi(nx)$ . Similarly we take  $\psi \in C_0^\infty([-T, T])$ ,  $\psi \geq 0$ ,  $\int_{\mathbb{R}} \psi(t) dt = 1$  and denote  $\psi_m(t) = m\psi(mt)$ . Since  $u \in C([-T, T]; L_x^2) \cap L^q([-T, T]; L_x^{p+1})$ , we have (by use of the strong continuity of the translation operator in  $L^r$ ,  $1 \leq r < \infty$  and in  $C([-T, T])$ )

$$\psi_m * \varphi_n * u \rightarrow u \text{ in } C([-T, T]; L_x^2) \cap L^q([-T, T]; L_x^{p+1}) \text{ as } m, n \rightarrow \infty$$

$$\psi_m * \varphi_n * (|u|^{p-1}u) \rightarrow (|u|^{p-1}u) \text{ in } L^{q'}([-T, T]; L_x^{\frac{p+1}{p}}) \text{ as } m, n \rightarrow \infty.$$

We take the convolution of (NLS) with  $\varphi_n$  and then with  $\psi_m$  to arrive at

$$i\partial_t u_{m,n} + \Delta u_{m,n} = \kappa \psi_m * \varphi_n * (|u|^{p-1}u), \quad u_{m,n} = \psi_m * \varphi_n * u. \quad (2.31)$$

We test the above equation for  $u_{m,n}$  by  $\overline{u_{m,n}} \in \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}_t \times \mathbb{R}_x^d)$  and then take the imaginary part. Similarly as the derivation of (1.8), we derive

$$\frac{1}{2} \frac{d}{dt} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |u_{m,n}|^2 dx = \kappa \text{Im} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} (\psi_m * \varphi_n * (|u|^{p-1}u)) \overline{u_{m,n}} dx.$$

### Step 2 Pass to the limit

For any  $T' \leq T$ , we derive from the above equality that

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{2} (\|u_{m,n}(T')\|_{L_x^2} - \|u_{m,n}(0)\|_{L_x^2}) &= \kappa \text{Im} \int_{[0, T'] \times \mathbb{R}^d} (\psi_m * \varphi_n * (|u|^{p-1}u)) \overline{u_{m,n}} dx dt \\ &\rightarrow \kappa \text{Im} \int_{[0, T'] \times \mathbb{R}^d} (|u|^{p-1}u) \overline{u} dx dt = 0, \end{aligned}$$

and hence

$$\|u(T')\|_{L_x^2} = \lim_{m, n \rightarrow \infty} \|u_{m,n}(T')\|_{L_x^2} = \lim_{m, n \rightarrow \infty} \|u_{m,n}(0)\|_{L_x^2} = \|u_0\|_{L_x^2}.$$

Recall that the existence time  $T$  depends only on  $p, d, \|u_0\|_{L_x^2}$ , the solution obtained in Theorem 2.2 can be extended to all the time by uniqueness continuation.  $\square$

### 2.2.3 $L^2$ critical case

**Theorem 2.4** (LWP & GWP for  $L^2$  critical case). *Let  $p = 1 + \frac{4}{d}$  be the  $L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)$  critical exponent. Then*

- (NLS) *is locally well-posed in  $L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)$  such that for any  $u_0 \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)$ , there exists a unique solution*

$$u \in X_T = \{u \in C([-T, T]; L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)) \mid u \in L_{t,x}^{p+1}([-T, T] \times \mathbb{R}^d)\},$$

*where  $T > 0$  depending on  $u_0, d$  and there exists a neighborhood  $U$  of  $u_0$  such that the flow map  $\Phi : L^2 \mapsto X_T$  via  $\Phi : u_0 \mapsto u$  is Lipschitz continuous;*

- (NLS) *is globally well-posed in  $L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)$  if  $\|u_0\|_{L_x^2} \leq \varepsilon_0$  with  $\varepsilon_0$  some fixed small constant depending on  $d$ .*

*Sketchy proof. Step 1 Smallness of  $\|S(t)u_0\|_{L^{p+1}([-T_0, T_0] \times \mathbb{R}^d)}$  for small  $T_0$*   
For any  $\varepsilon > 0$ , for any  $u_0 \in L^2$ , there exists a neighborhood  $U$  of  $u_0$  and  $T_0 > 0$  such that

$$\|S(t)v_0\|_{L_{t,x}^{p+1}([-T_0, T_0] \times \mathbb{R}^d)} \leq \varepsilon, \quad \forall v_0 \in U.$$

Indeed, the mapping  $S(t) : L^2(\mathbb{R}^d) \mapsto X_T$  is locally Lipschitz. By the density argument we can assume without loss of generality that  $u_0 \in H^s(\mathbb{R}^d)$  with  $s > \frac{d}{2} - \frac{d}{p+1}$  such that the Sobolev embedding  $H^s(\mathbb{R}^d) \hookrightarrow L^{p+1}(\mathbb{R}^d)$  holds, then  $\|S(t)u_0\|_{L_{t,x}^{p+1}([-T_0, T_0] \times \mathbb{R}^d)} \leq CT_0^{1/(p+1)}\|u_0\|_{H^s} < \varepsilon/4$  for small enough  $T_0$ .

#### Step 2 LWP in $L^2$

We prove the local well-posedness result by searching for the fixed point for the mapping  $\Psi$  defined in (2.29) in

$$\{u \in X_{T_0} \mid \|u\|_{[-T_0, T_0]} \leq 2C\|u_0\|_{L_x^2}, \|u\|_{L_{t,x}^{p+1}([-T_0, T_0] \times \mathbb{R}^d)} \leq 2\varepsilon\},$$

for some sufficiently small  $\varepsilon$  depending on  $\|u_0\|_{L_x^2}, d$ . The Banach fixed-point theorem works since by Step 1 and Strichartz estimates

$$\begin{aligned} \|\Psi(u)\|_{L_{t,x}^{p+1}([-T, T] \times \mathbb{R}^d)} &\leq \varepsilon + C\|u\|_{L^{p+1}([-T, T] \times \mathbb{R}^d)}^p, \quad T \leq T_0, \\ \|\Psi(u)\|_{[-T, T]} &\leq C\|u_0\|_{L_x^2} + C\|u\|_{L^{p+1}([-T, T] \times \mathbb{R}^d)}^p, \\ \|\Psi(u) - \Psi(v)\|_{[-T, T]} &\leq C(\|u\|_{L^{p+1}([-T, T] \times \mathbb{R}^d)}^{p-1} + \|v\|_{L^{p+1}([-T, T] \times \mathbb{R}^d)}^{p-1})\|u - v\|_{[-T, T]}. \end{aligned} \tag{2.32}$$

#### Step 3 Small initial data case

If  $\|u_0\|_{L_x^2} \leq \varepsilon_0$ , then the inequalities in (2.32) hold on any time interval  $[-T, T]$  with  $\varepsilon$  replaced by  $C\varepsilon_0$  and the mapping  $\Psi$  is a contraction mapping in  $X_T(2C\varepsilon_0)$  for any  $T > 0$  if  $\varepsilon_0$  is small enough.  $\square$



**Remark 2.3.** • We notice that in Theorem 2.4 there are well-posedness results in  $L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)$  for the  $L^2$ -critical case if there are smallness conditions, either on the existing time or on the size of the initial data. Nevertheless here, since the existing time depends on  $u_0$  itself and not only on its norm  $\|u_0\|_{L^2_x}$ , we can not use the mass conservation law to extend the local well-posed result to any time interval.

- In the defocusing  $L^2$  critical case, there are some global well-posedness results without smallness assumption on the initial data, but
  - under an additional decay assumption  $|x|^m u_0 \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)$ ,  $m > 3/5$ , see [Bourgain 1998 JAM];
  - under an additional regularity assumption  $u_0 \in H^s(\mathbb{R}^d)$ ,  $s > 4/7$ , see [Colliander-Keel-Staffilani-Takaoka-Tao 2008 DCDS-A];
  - in the radial case, see [Tao-Visan-Zhang 2007 DMJ], [Killip-Tao-Visan 2009 JEMS] for higher and two dimensional cases respectively.
- In the focusing  $L^2$  critical case, there is global well-posedness result if  $u_0$  is radial and  $\|u_0\|_{L^2} < \|Q\|_{L^2}$  where  $Q$  is the solution of the elliptic equation (1.11). There is much study of the blowup phenomena for  $\|u_0\|_{L^2} \geq \|Q\|_{L^2}$  analyzed by Merle-Raphaël, etc.
- In the supercritical case  $p > 1 + \frac{4}{d}$ , there are ill-posedness results for (NLS), see [Christ-Colliander-Tao 2003 arXiv]: If  $s_c = \frac{d}{2} - \frac{2}{p-1} > 0$ , then for any  $s < s_c$ , for any  $0 < \delta, \epsilon < 1$  and any  $t > 0$ , there exist solutions  $u_1, u_2$  of (NLS) with smooth initial data  $u_1(0), u_2(0) \in \mathcal{S}$  such that

$$\begin{aligned} \|u_1(0)\|_{H^s} + \|u_2(0)\|_{H^s} &\leq C\epsilon, & \|u_1(0) - u_2(0)\|_{H^s} &\leq C\delta, \\ \|u_1(t) - u_2(t)\|_{H^s} &\geq c\epsilon. \end{aligned}$$

In the focusing case, the blowup phenomenon in finite time from smooth data can be proved simply via the virial identity and we can construct the blowup example by applying scaling and Galilean transformation to the soliton solutions.

---

[10.11.2017]  
[17.11.2017]

## 2.3 Sobolev spaces

### 2.3.1 Sobolev spaces $H^s(\mathbb{R}^d)$

Recall the definition (1.5) of the Sobolev space  $H^s(\mathbb{R}^d)$ ,  $s \in \mathbb{R}$  as follows

$$H^s(\mathbb{R}^d) := \{f \in \mathcal{S}'(\mathbb{R}^d) \mid \|f\|_{H^s(\mathbb{R}^d)}^2 := \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} (1 + |\xi|^2)^s |\hat{f}(\xi)|^2 d\xi < \infty\}. \quad (2.33)$$

If  $s \in \mathbb{N}$ , then

$$H^s(\mathbb{R}^d) = \{f \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^d) \mid \partial^\alpha f \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^d), \forall \alpha \text{ with } |\alpha| \leq s\}.$$

It is easy to derive from the definition of  $\|\cdot\|_{H^s}$ -norm that  $H^{s_1}(\mathbb{R}^d) \subset H^{s_0}(\mathbb{R}^d)$  if  $s_0 \leq s_1$  and the following interpolation inequality by Hölder's inequality:

$$\|f\|_{H^{s_\theta}} \leq C \|f\|_{H^{s_0}}^\theta \|f\|_{H^{s_1}}^{1-\theta}, \text{ with } s_\theta = \theta s_0 + (1 - \theta) s_1. \quad (2.34)$$

The Sobolev space  $H^s(\mathbb{R}^d)$  is a Hilbert space with the inner product

$$(u, v)_{H^s(\mathbb{R}^d)} = \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} (1 + |\xi|^2)^s \hat{u}(\xi) \overline{\hat{v}(\xi)} d\xi.$$

and it is isometrically anti-isomorphic to its dual space  $(H^s(\mathbb{R}^d))'$ . It is also very useful to identify  $H^{-s}(\mathbb{R}^d)$  as the set of the continuous linear functionals on  $H^s(\mathbb{R}^d)$  via  $L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)$ -inner product: Let  $f \in \mathcal{S}'(\mathbb{R}^d)$  and  $\hat{f} \in L^2_{\text{loc}}(\mathbb{R}^d)$ , then

$$f \in H^{-s}(\mathbb{R}^d) \Leftrightarrow \sup_{g \in \mathcal{S}, \|g\|_{H^s} \leq 1} |\langle f, g \rangle_{\mathcal{S}', \mathcal{S}}| < \infty,$$

and we will denote  $\langle f, g \rangle_{H^{-s}, H^s} = \langle (1 + |\xi|^2)^{-s/2} \hat{f}, (1 + |\xi|^2)^{s/2} \hat{g} \rangle_{L^2}$ .

**Theorem 2.5.** [Sobolev embedding for  $H^s(\mathbb{R}^d)$ ] *The following Sobolev embedding results hold true:*

- If  $0 \leq s < \frac{d}{2}$ , then  $H^s(\mathbb{R}^d) \hookrightarrow L^p(\mathbb{R}^d)$  for any  $p \in [2, p_c]$  with  $\frac{d}{2} - s = \frac{d}{p_c}$  continuously and there exists a constant  $C$  depending on  $d, s$  such that

$$\|f\|_{L^{p_c}(\mathbb{R}^d)} \leq C \|f\|_{\dot{H}^s(\mathbb{R}^d)}, \quad \forall f \in \mathcal{D}(\mathbb{R}^d), \quad (2.35)$$

where the homogeneous Sobolev norm is defined in (1.6):  $\|f\|_{\dot{H}^s(\mathbb{R}^d)}^2 = \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |\xi|^{2s} |\hat{f}(\xi)|^2 d\xi$ .

- If  $s = \frac{d}{2}$ , then  $H^s(\mathbb{R}^d) \hookrightarrow L^p(\mathbb{R}^d)$ , for all  $2 \leq p < \infty$  continuously;
- If  $s > \frac{d}{2}$ , then  $H^s(\mathbb{R}^d) \hookrightarrow C_0(\mathbb{R}^d)$  continuously;

- If  $0 \leq s < \frac{d}{2}$ , then  $L^{p'}(\mathbb{R}^d) \hookrightarrow H^{-s}(\mathbb{R}^d)$ ,  $p \in [2, p_c]$  i.e.  $p' \in [(\frac{1}{2} + \frac{s}{d})^{-1}, 2]$  continuously.

**Proof. Step 1 Proof of (2.35)**

The case  $s = 0$  is obvious and we consider the case  $s > 0$ ,  $p_c > 2$ . We decompose  $f$  into low- and high- frequency part

$$f = f_l + f_h, \quad \hat{f}_l = \mathbf{1}_{\leq A} \hat{f}, \quad \hat{f}_h = \mathbf{1}_{> A} \hat{f},$$

with  $A$  to be determined later on. Then we can control  $f_l$  by

$$\begin{aligned} \|f_l\|_{L^\infty} &\leq (2\pi)^{-\frac{d}{2}} \|\hat{f}_l\|_{L^1} = (2\pi)^{-\frac{d}{2}} \int_{|\xi| \leq A} |\hat{f}(\xi)| |\xi|^s |\xi|^{-s} d\xi \\ &\leq (2\pi)^{-\frac{d}{2}} \|\hat{f}(\xi)| |\xi|^s\|_{L^2} \left( \int_{|\xi| \leq A} |\xi|^{-2s} d\xi \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \leq C \|f\|_{\dot{H}^s} A^{\frac{d}{2}-s} = C \|f\|_{\dot{H}^s} A^{\frac{d}{p_c}}. \end{aligned}$$

We write

$$\|f\|_{L^p}^p = p \int_0^\infty \lambda^{p-1} |\{ |f| \geq \lambda \}| d\lambda,$$

and for each  $\lambda \in (0, \infty)$ , we take  $A_\lambda = (C^{-1} \|f\|_{\dot{H}^s}^{-1} \lambda)^{\frac{p_c}{d}}$  for  $C$  some large enough constant such that

$$\begin{aligned} \|f\|_{L^{p_c}}^{p_c} &\leq p_c \int_0^\infty \lambda^{p_c-1} |\{ |f_h| \geq \lambda/2 \}| d\lambda \leq 4p_c \int_0^\infty \lambda^{p_c-3} \|f_h\|_{L^2}^2 d\lambda \\ &= 4p_c \int_0^\infty \lambda^{p_c-3} \int_{|\xi| > (C^{-1} \|f\|_{\dot{H}^s}^{-1} \lambda)^{\frac{p_c}{d}}} |\hat{f}|^2 d\xi d\lambda \\ &\leq \frac{4p_c}{p_c-2} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} (C \|f\|_{\dot{H}^s} |\xi|^{\frac{d}{p_c}})^{(p_c-2)} |\hat{f}(\xi)|^2 d\xi \leq C \|f\|_{\dot{H}^s}^{p_c}. \end{aligned}$$

**Step 2 Case  $0 \leq s < \frac{d}{2}$**

By interpolation of Lebesgue spaces and  $\|f\|_{H^s} \sim \|f\|_{L^2} + \|f\|_{\dot{H}^s}$ , we have the Sobolev embedding  $H^s \hookrightarrow L^p$ ,  $\forall p \in [2, p_c]$ .

**Step 3 Case  $s = \frac{d}{2}$**

For any  $p \in [2, \infty)$ , there exists  $s_0 = \frac{d}{2} - \frac{d}{p} \in [0, \frac{d}{2})$  such that  $H^{\frac{d}{2}} \hookrightarrow H^{s_0} \hookrightarrow L^p$ .

**Step 4 Case  $s > \frac{d}{2}$**

Since

$$\begin{aligned} \|\hat{f}\|_{L^1(\mathbb{R}^d)} &= \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} (1 + |\xi|^2)^{s/2} |\hat{f}(\xi)| (1 + |\xi|^2)^{-s/2} d\xi \\ &\leq \|f\|_{H^s} \|(1 + |\xi|^2)^{-s/2}\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)} \leq C \|f\|_{H^s}, \text{ if } s > \frac{d}{2}, \end{aligned}$$

the function  $f$  as the inverse Fourier transform of a  $L^1$ -function is bounded, continuous and tends to 0 at infinity by Riemann-Lebesgue Lemma.

**Step 5 Case**  $-s \in (-\frac{d}{2}, 0]$

By density, it suffices to show  $\|f\|_{H^{-s}} \leq C\|f\|_{L^{p'}}$ ,  $0 \leq \frac{d}{p'} - \frac{d}{2} \leq s$  for  $f \in \mathcal{S}$ . Indeed, since  $\frac{d}{2} - \frac{d}{p} \leq s$ , we derive from the embedding  $H^s(\mathbb{R}^d) \hookrightarrow L^p(\mathbb{R}^d)$  that

$$\|f\|_{H^{-s}} = \sup_{g \in \mathcal{S}, \|g\|_{H^s} \leq 1} \left| \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} f \bar{g} \, dx \right| \leq \|f\|_{L^{p'}} \sup_{g \in \mathcal{S}, \|g\|_{H^s} \leq 1} \|g\|_{L^p} \leq C\|f\|_{L^{p'}}.$$

□

**Remark 2.4.** Let  $s = 1$ , then

$$\begin{aligned} H^1(\mathbb{R}) &\hookrightarrow C_0(\mathbb{R}), & H^1(\mathbb{R}^2) &\hookrightarrow L^p(\mathbb{R}^2), \quad \forall p \in [2, \infty), \\ H^1(\mathbb{R}^3) &\hookrightarrow L^p(\mathbb{R}^3), & L^{p'}(\mathbb{R}^3) &\hookrightarrow H^{-1}(\mathbb{R}^3), \quad \forall p \in [2, 6]. \end{aligned}$$

**Corollary 2.1** (Gagliardo-Nirenberg's inequality). For any  $p \in [2, 2^*)$  with  $2^* = \begin{cases} \infty & \text{if } d = 1, 2 \\ \frac{2d}{d-2} & \text{if } d \geq 3 \end{cases}$ , there exists a constant  $C$  depending on  $p, d$  such that the following interpolation inequality holds true

$$\|f\|_{L^p(\mathbb{R}^d)} \leq C\|f\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)}^{1-\theta} \|\nabla f\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)}^\theta, \quad \forall f \in H^1(\mathbb{R}^d), \quad \theta = \frac{d}{2} - \frac{d}{p}.$$

*Proof.* It follows from the Sobolev embedding  $\|f\|_{L^p(\mathbb{R}^d)} \leq C\|f\|_{\dot{H}^\theta(\mathbb{R}^d)}$  with  $\theta = \frac{d}{2} - \frac{d}{p} \in [0, 1)$ ,  $p \in [2, 2^*)$  and the Sobolev interpolation

$$\|f\|_{\dot{H}^\theta}^2 = \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |\hat{f}|^{2(1-\theta)} (|\xi|^2 |\hat{f}|^2)^\theta \, d\xi \leq \|f\|_{L^2}^{1-\theta} \|f\|_{\dot{H}^1}^\theta.$$

□

**Theorem 2.6.** Let  $s > 0$  and let  $p_c = d(\frac{d}{2} - s)^{-1}$  if  $s < \frac{d}{2}$  and  $p_c = \infty$  if  $s \geq \frac{d}{2}$ . Then the embedding  $H^s(\mathbb{R}^d) \hookrightarrow L_{\text{loc}}^p(\mathbb{R}^d)$ ,  $1 \leq p < p_c$  is compact in the following sense: For any bounded sequence  $(f_n)_n$  in  $H^s(\mathbb{R}^d)$ , there exists a subsequence  $(f_{\psi(n)})_n$  and  $f \in H^s(\mathbb{R}^d)$  such that for any compact set  $K \subset\subset \mathbb{R}^d$

$$f_{\psi(n)} \rightarrow f \text{ in } L^p(K).$$

*Sketchy proof.* Take the smooth mollifier function:  $\varphi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^d)$ ,  $\varphi \geq 0$ ,  $\int_{\mathbb{R}^d} \varphi \, dx = 1$  and its rescaled functions  $\varphi_\varepsilon(x) = \varepsilon^{-d} \varphi(\varepsilon^{-1}x)$ . Then for any

$g \in \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^d)$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} \|\varphi_\varepsilon * g - g\|_{L^2}^2 &\leq \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |\hat{\varphi}(\varepsilon\xi) - 1|^2 |\hat{g}(\xi)|^2 d\xi \leq \|g\|_{H^s(\mathbb{R}^d)}^2 \sup_{\xi \in \mathbb{R}^d} \frac{|\hat{\varphi}(\varepsilon\xi) - 1|^2}{(1 + |\xi|^2)^s}, \\ \|\varphi_\varepsilon * g - g\|_{L^\infty} &\leq \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |\hat{\varphi}(\varepsilon\xi) - 1| |\hat{g}(\xi)| d\xi \leq \|g\|_{H^s(\mathbb{R}^d)} \left( \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} \frac{|\hat{\varphi}(\varepsilon\xi) - 1|^2}{(1 + |\xi|^2)^s} d\xi \right)^{\frac{1}{2}}. \end{aligned}$$

Hence

$$\begin{aligned} \sup_{\|g\|_{H^s} \leq 1} \|\varphi_\varepsilon * g - g\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)} &\rightarrow 0 \text{ as } \varepsilon \rightarrow 0, \text{ if } s > 0, \\ \sup_{\|g\|_{H^s} \leq 1} \|\varphi_\varepsilon * g - g\|_{L^\infty(\mathbb{R}^d)} &\rightarrow 0 \text{ as } \varepsilon \rightarrow 0, \text{ if } s > \frac{d}{2}. \end{aligned}$$

Since for any fixed  $\varepsilon > 0$ , for any fixed  $R > 0$ , the map  $\varphi_{\varepsilon*} : L^2(\mathbb{R}^d) \mapsto L^\infty(\bar{B}_R)$ ,  $\bar{B}_R = \{x \in \mathbb{R}^d \mid |x| \leq R\}$  is compact (by Young's inequality and Arzela-Ascoli's theorem), the identity map  $\text{Id} : H^s(\mathbb{R}^d) (\subset L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)) \mapsto L^2(\bar{B}_R) (\subset L^\infty(\bar{B}_R))$ ,  $s > 0$  as the uniform limit of  $\varphi_{\varepsilon*}$  is compact. Since  $H^s(\mathbb{R}^d) \hookrightarrow L^{p_c}(\mathbb{R}^d)$  if  $s < \frac{d}{2}$ , then by interpolation (or Hölder's inequality)  $H^s(\mathbb{R}^d) \hookrightarrow L^p(\bar{B}_R)$  for  $p \in [1, p_c)$  and Cantor's diagonal argument ensures the compact embedding  $H^s(\mathbb{R}^d) \hookrightarrow L^p_{\text{loc}}(\mathbb{R}^d)$ . Similar result holds for  $s \geq \frac{d}{2}$ .  $\square$

**Remark 2.5.** *The compact embedding Theorem 2.6 is optimal in the sense that the embeddings  $H^s(\mathbb{R}^d) \hookrightarrow L^p(\mathbb{R}^d)$ ,  $1 \leq p < p_c$  and  $H^s(\mathbb{R}^d) \hookrightarrow L^{p_c}_{\text{loc}}(\mathbb{R}^d)$  are not compact. Indeed, the canonical counter examples should be the sequences  $f_n(x) = f(x - n)$  and  $f_\varepsilon(x) = \varepsilon^{s - \frac{d}{2}} f(\varepsilon^{-1}x)$  for some compactly supported smooth function  $f$ .*

### 2.3.2 Sobolev spaces $W^{k,p}(\mathbb{R}^d)$

Recall the definition of the Sobolev space  $W^{k,p}(\mathbb{R}^d)$ ,  $k \geq 0$  integers as follows

$$W^{k,p}(\mathbb{R}^d) = \{f \in L^p(\mathbb{R}^d) \mid \partial^\alpha f \in L^p(\mathbb{R}^d), 0 \leq |\alpha| \leq k\}. \quad (2.36)$$

The Sobolev space  $W^{k,p}(\mathbb{R}^d)$ ,  $k \in \mathbb{N}$ ,  $1 \leq p \leq \infty$  is a Banach space equipped with the norm

$$\|f\|_{W^{k,p}(\mathbb{R}^d)} = \begin{cases} \left( \sum_{|\alpha| \leq k} \|\partial^\alpha f\|_{L^p(\mathbb{R}^d)}^p \right)^{\frac{1}{p}} & \text{if } 1 \leq p < \infty, \\ \max_{|\alpha| \leq k} \|\partial^\alpha f\|_{L^\infty(\mathbb{R}^d)} & \text{if } p = \infty. \end{cases}$$

For  $1 \leq p < \infty$ , the test function space  $\mathcal{D}(\mathbb{R}^d)$  is dense in  $W^{k,p}(\mathbb{R}^d)$ . If  $p = 2$ , then  $W^{k,2}(\mathbb{R}^d) = H^k(\mathbb{R}^d)$  as defined in (2.33) and obviously  $W^{k_1,p}(\mathbb{R}^d) \subset W^{k_0,p}(\mathbb{R}^d)$  if  $k_0 \leq k_1$ . We can also define the general Sobolev space  $W^{s,p}(\Omega)$ ,

$W_0^{s,p}(\Omega)$ ,  $s \in \mathbb{R}$ ,  $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^d$  some open set, which we don't discuss in this lecture. We just keep in mind that in bounded domains  $\Omega$ , one has always to pay attention to the boundary.

Recall the definition of the Hölder spaces  $C^{m,\sigma}(\Omega)$ ,  $m \in \mathbb{N}$ ,  $\sigma \in (0,1)$ ,  $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^d$  some open set, as follows

$$\begin{aligned} C^{m,\sigma}(\Omega) &= \{f \in C^m(\Omega) \mid \partial^\alpha f \in C^\sigma(\Omega), \forall |\alpha| = m\}, \\ C^{0,\sigma}(\Omega) &:= C^\sigma(\Omega) = \{f \in C(\Omega) \mid \|f\|_{C^\sigma(K)} < \infty, \forall K \subset \Omega \text{ compact}\}, \end{aligned} \quad (2.37)$$

where

$$\|f\|_{C^\sigma(\bar{K})} = \|f\|_{L^\infty(K)} + \sup_{x,y \in K, x \neq y} \frac{|f(x) - f(y)|}{|x - y|^\sigma}.$$

Similarly we can define

$$\begin{aligned} C^{m,\sigma}(\bar{\Omega}) &= \{f \in C^m(\bar{\Omega}) \mid \partial^\alpha f \in C^\sigma(\bar{\Omega}), \forall |\alpha| = m\}, \\ C^{0,\sigma}(\bar{\Omega}) &:= C^\sigma(\bar{\Omega}) = \{f \in C(\bar{\Omega}) \mid \|f\|_{C^\sigma(\bar{\Omega})} < \infty\}. \end{aligned}$$

We also have the following Sobolev embedding theorem for  $W^{k,p}(\mathbb{R}^d)$  which we don't prove in this lecture:

**Theorem 2.7.** *Let  $k \in \mathbb{N}^*$ ,  $1 \leq p < \infty$ . Then the following Sobolev embedding results hold true:*

- If  $1 \leq p < \frac{d}{k}$ , then  $W^{k,p}(\mathbb{R}^d) \hookrightarrow L^q(\mathbb{R}^d)$  for any  $q \in [p, p_c]$  with  $\frac{d}{p} - k = \frac{d}{p_c}$  continuously and there exists a constant  $C$  depending on  $d, k, p$  such that

$$\|f\|_{L^{p_c}(\mathbb{R}^d)} \leq C \sum_{|\alpha|=k} \|\partial^\alpha f\|_{L^p(\mathbb{R}^d)};$$

- If  $p = \frac{d}{k}$ , then  $W^{k,\frac{d}{k}}(\mathbb{R}^d) \hookrightarrow L^q(\mathbb{R}^d)$  for any  $q \in [p, \infty)$  continuously;
- If  $\max(1, \frac{d}{k}) < p < \infty$ , then  $W^{k,p}(\mathbb{R}^d) \hookrightarrow C^{m,\sigma}(\mathbb{R}^d) \cap C_0(\mathbb{R}^d)$ ,  $m = [k - \frac{d}{p}]$ ,  $\sigma = k - m$ .

Furthermore, the embeddings are compact in the local sense as in Theorem

2.6: For example, let  $k = 1$ ,  $p^* = \begin{cases} \frac{dp}{d-p} & \text{if } p < d \\ \infty & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$ , then the embedding

$W^{1,p}(\mathbb{R}^d) \hookrightarrow L_{\text{loc}}^q(\mathbb{R}^d)$  is compact for  $q \in [1, p^*)$ .

---

[17.11.2017]  
[24.11.2017]

## 2.4 $H^1$ theory

### 2.4.1 Local well-posedness in $H^1$

**Theorem 2.8** (LWP in  $H^1$ ). *Let  $1 < p < \infty$  if  $d = 1, 2$  and  $1 < p < 1 + \frac{4}{d-2}$  if  $d \geq 3$  be a  $H^1$  subcritical exponent. Let  $\kappa = \pm 1$ . Let  $u_0 \in H^1(\mathbb{R}^d)$ .*

*Then (NLS) is locally well-posed in  $H^1(\mathbb{R}^d)$ : There exists a positive time  $T > 0$  depending on  $\|u_0\|_{H^1}, p, d$ , a unique solution*

$$u \in Y_T = \{u \in C([-T, T]; H^1(\mathbb{R}^d)) \mid u \in L^q([-T, T]; W^{1,\rho}(\mathbb{R}^d))\}$$

*with admissible exponent pair  $(q, \rho) = \left(\frac{4(p+1)}{(d-2)(p-1)}, \frac{d(p+1)}{d+p-1}\right)$  if  $d \geq 3$*

*and admissible exponent pair  $(q, \rho)$ ,  $\rho \in [2, \infty)$ ,  $d = 2$  and  $\rho \in [2, \infty]$ ,  $d = 1$ ,*

*and there exists a neighborhood  $V$  of  $u_0$  in  $H^1$  such that the flow map*

$$\Phi : V \mapsto Y_T \text{ via } u_0 \mapsto u$$

*is Lipschitzian continuous.*

*Sketchy proof.* We take the norm

$$\|u\|_T = \|u\|_{L_T^\infty H^1} + \|u\|_{L_T^q L^\rho} + \|\nabla u\|_{L_T^q L^\rho} \text{ where } \|u\|_{L_T^q Y} := \left\| \|u(t, \cdot)\|_Y \right\|_{L^q([-T, T])},$$

and we are going to show that the nonlinear map  $\Psi : u \mapsto \Psi(u)$  given by (2.29) is a well-defined contraction map in the complete metric space  $Y_T(R) := \{u \in Y_T \mid \|u\|_T \leq R\}$  with appropriately chosen  $T, R$ .

For  $d \geq 3$ , by Strichartz estimates,

$$\|\Psi(u)\|_{L_T^\infty L^2 \cap L_T^q L^\rho} \leq C \|u_0\|_{L^2} + C \| |u|^{p-1} u \|_{L_T^{q'} L^{\rho'}}.$$

Similarly,

$$\begin{aligned} \|\nabla \Psi(u)\|_{L_T^\infty L^2 \cap L_T^q L^\rho} &\leq C \|\nabla u_0\|_{L^2} + C \|\nabla(|u|^{p-1} u)\|_{L_T^{q'} L^{\rho'}} \\ &\leq C \|\nabla u_0\|_{L^2} + C \left\| \|u\|_{L^r}^{p-1} \|\nabla u\|_{L^\rho} \right\|_{L_T^{q'}}, \quad \frac{p-1}{r} + \frac{1}{\rho} = \frac{1}{\rho'}. \end{aligned}$$

If  $\frac{1}{r} = \frac{1}{\rho} - \frac{1}{d} \in (0, \frac{1}{\rho})$  such that the Sobolev embedding  $\|u\|_{L^r(\mathbb{R}^d)} \leq C \|u\|_{W^{1,\rho}(\mathbb{R}^d)}$  holds, then we have

$$\|\nabla \Psi(u)\|_{L_T^\infty L^2 \cap L_T^q L^\rho} \leq C \|\nabla u_0\|_{L^2} + CT^{\frac{1}{q'} - \frac{p}{q}} \|u\|_T^p,$$

if

$$\frac{2}{q} + \frac{d}{\rho} = \frac{d}{2}, \quad \frac{p-1}{r} + \frac{1}{\rho} = \frac{1}{\rho'}, \quad \frac{1}{r} = \frac{1}{\rho} - \frac{1}{d},$$

such that  $\frac{1}{q'} - \frac{p}{q} = \frac{d-2}{4} \left(1 + \frac{4}{d-2} - p\right) > 0$  if  $p < 1 + \frac{4}{d-2}$ .

Therefore for  $(q, \rho)$  defined as in the hypothesis when  $d \geq 3$ , we arrive at

$$\|\Psi(u)\|_T = \|\Psi(u)\|_{L_T^\infty L^2 \cap L_T^q L^\rho} + \|\nabla \Psi(u)\|_{L_T^\infty L^2 \cap L_T^q L^\rho} \leq C \|u_0\|_{H^1} + CT^{\frac{1}{q'} - \frac{p}{q}} \|u\|_T^p,$$

and we can choose

$$R = C \|u_0\|_{H^1}, \quad T = C^{-1} \|u_0\|_{H^1}^{-\frac{4}{d-2} \frac{p-1}{1 + \frac{4}{d-2} - p}},$$

for some large enough constant  $C$  such that  $\Psi$  is a contractive mapping in  $Y_T(R)$ .

For  $d = 1, 2$ , for any  $1 < p < \infty$ , there exists an admissible exponent pair  $(q_0, \rho_0)$  with  $q_0 > p \geq \rho_0/2 > 1$  such that the map  $\Psi$  is contractive in  $\{u \in C([-T, T]; H^1) \mid \|u\|_T \leq R\}$  for appropriately chosen  $R, T$  since

$$\begin{aligned} \|\Psi(u)\|_T &\leq C \|u_0\|_{H^1} + C \| |u|^{p-1} u \|_{L_T^1 L^2} + C \| |u|^{p-1} \nabla u \|_{L_T^1 L^2} \\ &\leq C \|u_0\|_{H^1} + CT^{1 - \frac{p}{q_0}} \|u\|_{L_T^{q_0} L^r}^{p-1} \|u\|_T, \quad \frac{p-1}{r} + \frac{1}{\rho_0} = \frac{1}{2}, \\ &\leq C \|u_0\|_{H^1} + CT^{1 - \frac{p}{q_0}} \|u\|_T^p, \quad r \in [\rho_0, \infty). \end{aligned}$$

□

**Remark 2.6.** *Since  $|u|^{p-1}u \in L_T^{q'} L^{\rho'}$  with  $(q, \rho)$  some admissible pair, the solution obtained above indeed belongs to  $L^q([-T, T]; W^{1, \rho_1})$  for any admissible exponent pair  $(q_1, \rho_1)$  by Strichartz estimates.*

## 2.4.2 Global well-posedness in $H^1$

**Theorem 2.9** (GWP in  $H^1$ ). *Assume the hypotheses in Theorem 2.8. Then the solution obtained in Theorem 2.8 can be extended globally in time if*

- *in the defocusing case  $\kappa = 1$ ;*
- *in the focusing case  $\kappa = -1$  and  $1 < p < 1 + \frac{4}{d}$ ;*
- *in the focusing case  $\kappa = -1$ ,  $p = 1 + \frac{4}{d}$  and  $\|u_0\|_{L^2} < c_0$  with  $c_0$  some fixed constant;*



- in the focusing case  $\kappa = -1$ ,  $1 + \frac{4}{d} < p$  and  $\|u_0\|_{H^1} \leq \varepsilon_0$  with  $\varepsilon_0$  some sufficiently small constant,

such that

$$u \in C(\mathbb{R}; H_x^1) \cap L_{\text{loc}}^q(\mathbb{R}; W^{1,\rho}(\mathbb{R}^d)) \text{ with admissible exponent pair } (q, \rho), \quad (2.38)$$

$$M(u(t)) = M(u_0), \quad E(u(t)) = E(u_0), \quad \forall t \in \mathbb{R}.$$

*Proof.* We first follow the procedure in the proof of Theorem 2.3 to show the conservation of the energy defined in (1.10). Indeed, for  $d \geq 3$ , we have from the proof of Theorem 2.8, the Sobolev embedding results in Theorem 2.7 and the interpolation results in Lebesgue spaces (i.e. log-convexity of  $L^p$  norms)  $\|f\|_{L^{p\theta}} \leq \|f\|_{L^{p_0}}^{1-\theta} \|f\|_{L^{p_1}}^\theta$  if  $\frac{1}{p\theta} = \frac{1-\theta}{p_0} + \frac{\theta}{p_1}$  that

$$\begin{aligned} u &\in (L_T^\infty H^1 \cap L_T^q W^{1,\rho}) \subset (L_T^\infty L^{(\frac{1}{2}-\frac{1}{d})^{-1}} \cap L_T^q L^{(\frac{1}{\rho}-\frac{1}{d})^{-1}}) \subset L_T^{p\alpha} L^{p(\frac{1}{\rho}+\frac{1}{d})^{-1}}, \\ |u|^{p-1}u &\in L_T^{q'} W^{1,\rho'} \subset L_T^{q'} L^{(\frac{1}{\rho'}-\frac{1}{d})^{-1}}, \quad |u|^{p-1}u \in L_T^\alpha L^{(\frac{1}{\rho}+\frac{1}{d})^{-1}}, \end{aligned}$$

for some

$$\alpha = \frac{q}{p(\frac{1}{2}-\frac{1}{d}) - \frac{1}{p}(\frac{1}{\rho}+\frac{1}{d})} > q \text{ since } 1 < p < 1 + \frac{4}{d-2}.$$

Hence we can assume

$$\begin{aligned} u_{m,n} &\rightarrow u \text{ in } L_T^q W^{1,\rho}, \\ |u_{m,n}|^{p-1}u_{m,n}, (|u|^{p-1}u)_{m,n} &\rightarrow |u|^{p-1}u \text{ in } L_T^{q'} W^{1,\rho'} \cap L_T^\alpha L^{(\frac{1}{\rho}+\frac{1}{d})^{-1}}, \end{aligned}$$

such that

$$\begin{aligned} -\kappa \int_{-T}^T \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} \Delta u_{m,n} |u_{m,n}|^{p-1} \bar{u}_{m,n} \, dx \, dt &\rightarrow \kappa \int_{-T}^T \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} \nabla u \cdot \nabla (|u|^{p-1} \bar{u}) \, dx \, dt, \\ \kappa \int_{-T}^T \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} \psi_m * \varphi_n * (|u|^{p-1}u) \Delta \bar{u}_{m,n} \, dx \, dt &\rightarrow -\kappa \int_{-T}^T \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} \nabla \bar{u} \cdot \nabla (|u|^{p-1}u) \, dx \, dt, \\ \int_{-T}^T \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} (\psi_m * \varphi_n * (|u|^{p-1}u) - |u_{m,n}|^{p-1}u_{m,n}) |u_{m,n}|^{p-1} \bar{u}_{m,n} \, dx \, dt &\rightarrow 0. \end{aligned}$$

Thus we test the regularized equation (2.31) by  $\Delta \bar{u}_{m,n} - \kappa |u_{m,n}|^{p-1} \bar{u}_{m,n}$ , take the imaginary part and then pass to the limit, to obtain the energy conservation law (1.10) for the solution  $u$  obtained in Theorem 2.8 on the time  $[-T, T]$ .

If  $\kappa = 1$ , then recalling the mass and energy conservation laws (the mass conservation law holds on the time interval  $[-T, T]$  whenever  $u \in C([-T, T]; L^2) \cap L^q([-T, T]; L^{p+1})$ ), we have the uniform bound  $\|u(t)\|_{H_x^1}^2 \leq M(u_0) + 2E(u_0)$  on the time interval  $[-T, T]$ . Since the existence time  $T$  only depends on  $p, d, \|u_0\|_{H^1}$ , the solution obtained in Theorem 2.8 can be extended uniquely to all the times.

[24.11.2017]  
[01.12.2017]

If  $\kappa = -1$ , then by the Gagliardo-Nirenberg's inequality in Corollary 2.1 for  $p+1 < 2^*$ , i.e.  $p < 1 + \frac{4}{d-2}$  the  $H^1$  subcritical exponent,

$$\|u\|_{L^{p+1}(\mathbb{R}^d)} \leq C_0 \|u\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)}^{1-\gamma} \|\nabla u\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)}^\gamma, \quad \gamma = \frac{d}{2} - \frac{d}{p+1} \in (0, 1), \quad (2.39)$$

we obtain from the energy conservation law that

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{2} \|\nabla u(t)\|_{L_x^2(\mathbb{R}^d)}^2 &\leq E(u_0) + \frac{1}{p+1} \|u(t)\|_{L_x^{p+1}(\mathbb{R}^d)}^{p+1} \\ &\leq E(u_0) + C \|u(t)\|_{L_x^2(\mathbb{R}^d)}^{(p+1)(1-\gamma)} \|\nabla u(t)\|_{L_x^2(\mathbb{R}^d)}^{(p+1)\gamma} \\ &\leq E(u_0) + C \|u(t)\|_{L_x^2(\mathbb{R}^d)}^{(p+1)(1-\gamma)(1-\frac{(p+1)\gamma}{2})^{-1}} + \frac{1}{4} \|\nabla u(t)\|_{L_x^2(\mathbb{R}^d)}^2, \end{aligned}$$

if

$$(p+1)\gamma = \frac{d}{2}(p+1) - d < 2 \text{ i.e. } 1 < p < 1 + \frac{4}{d}.$$

By the mass conservation law, we obtain the uniform bound on  $\|u(t)\|_{H_x^1}$  on the existence time interval and hence the global well-posedness holds true in the mass subcritical case.

If  $\kappa = -1$  and  $p = 1 + \frac{4}{d}$ , then the above inequality is replaced by

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{2} \|\nabla u(t)\|_{L_x^2(\mathbb{R}^d)}^2 &\leq E(u_0) + \frac{1}{2 + \frac{4}{d}} \|u(t)\|_{L_x^{p+1}(\mathbb{R}^d)}^{p+1} \\ &\leq E(u_0) + \frac{1}{2 + \frac{4}{d}} C_0^{2 + \frac{4}{d}} \|u(t)\|_{L_x^2(\mathbb{R}^d)}^{\frac{4}{d}} \|\nabla u(t)\|_{L_x^2(\mathbb{R}^d)}^2. \end{aligned}$$

Thus if  $\|u_0\|_{L_x^2} < c_0$  some fixed constant then the solution still extends globally in time.

If  $\kappa = -1$  and  $p > 1 + \frac{4}{d}$  energy subcritical, then  $(p+1)\gamma > 2$  and we can assume the smallness condition  $\|u_0\|_{H_x^1} \leq \varepsilon_0$  such that  $\|u(t)\|_{H_x^1} \leq 2\varepsilon_0$  globally in time for sufficiently small  $\varepsilon_0$ .  $\square$

**Remark 2.7.** It was proved in [Weinstein '1983 CMP] that if  $p = 1 + \frac{4}{d}$ , then

$$\inf_{f \in H^1} \frac{\|f\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)}^{\frac{4}{d}} \|\nabla f\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)}^2}{\|f\|_{L^{2+\frac{4}{d}}(\mathbb{R}^d)}^{2+\frac{4}{d}}} = \frac{\|Q\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)}^{\frac{4}{d}}}{1 + \frac{2}{d}}, \quad (2.40)$$

$$\text{i.e. } \frac{1}{2 + \frac{4}{d}} \|f\|_{L^{2+\frac{4}{d}}(\mathbb{R}^d)}^{2+\frac{4}{d}} \leq \frac{1}{2} \frac{\|f\|_{L^2}^{\frac{4}{d}} \|\nabla f\|_{L^2}^2}{\|Q\|_{L^2}^{\frac{4}{d}}},$$

where  $Q$  is the unique positive radial solution of (1.11). It follows from (2.40) that if  $\|u_0\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)} < \|Q\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)} = c_0$  then the focusing (NLS) in the mass critical case is globally well-posed.

**Remark 2.8.** We can prove the local-in-time well-posedness results in  $H^2(\mathbb{R}^d)$  for the case  $\begin{cases} 1 < p < \frac{d}{d-4} & \text{if } d \geq 5 \\ 1 < p < \infty & \text{if } d \leq 4 \end{cases}$ , such that the solution stays in  $C([-T, T]; H^2(\mathbb{R}^d)) \cap L^q([-T, T]; W^{2,p}(\mathbb{R}^d))$  with  $(q, p)$  admissible exponent pair.

We can also consider the general Sobolev space  $H^s(\mathbb{R}^d)$ ,  $0 < s < \min\{1, \frac{d}{2}\}$  with  $1 < p < 1 + \frac{4}{d-2s}$  and so on.

**Remark 2.9.** We can also show the existence result by compactness method (instead of Banach fixed point theorem here):

- Step 1: Construct a sequence of approximate smooth solutions  $u_\varepsilon$  (by regularising (NLS));
- Step 2: Show a priori uniform estimates for the sequence  $u_\varepsilon$  (e.g.  $\|u_\varepsilon\|_{L_T^p(X)} \leq C < \infty$ );
- Step 3: Pass to the limit by some compactness argument which comes usually from the uniform bound for the time derivatives  $\partial_t u_\varepsilon$ , e.g. by Aubin-Lions' Lemma, if  $X \leftrightarrow Y \leftrightarrow Z$ ,  $\|u_\varepsilon\|_{L_T^p(X)} + \|\partial_t u_\varepsilon\|_{L_T^q(Z)} \leq C$ , then  $u_\varepsilon \rightarrow u$  in  $L_T^p(Y)$  if  $p < \infty$  or  $u_\varepsilon \rightarrow u$  in  $C([0, T]; Y)$  if  $p = \infty$  and  $q > 1$ , such that the strong limit  $u$  solves (NLS).

The above procedure is a quite standard way to show the existence result, nevertheless the uniqueness/continuity results are not ensured a priori and their proofs need other arguments.

Here, we may follow the above procedure to show the well-posedness result for (NLS) and we have used the idea to show the mass/energy conservation laws.

The solutions obtained by contraction argument are usually called strong solutions which are unique, continuously depending on the initial data, while the solutions obtained by the above compactness method are usually called weak solutions which could exist all the times but are possibly not unique. Sometimes the strong solutions and the weak solutions coincide.

### 2.4.3 The virial space case

Let us define the virial space

$$\Sigma = \{u \in H^1(\mathbb{R}^d) \mid xu \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)\}, \quad (2.41)$$

consisting of  $H^1$ -functions which decay faster than  $|x|^{-1-d/2}$  at infinity. We also define the associated norm as

$$\|u\|_{\Sigma} = \|u\|_{H_x^1} + \|xu\|_{L_x^2}.$$

Define the partial differential operator  $P$  as

$$P = x + 2it\nabla, \quad P_j = x_j + 2it\partial_{x_j}, \quad j = 1, \dots, d.$$

It is easy to see that  $P : \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^d) \mapsto \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^d)$  and by duality  $P$  is a map  $\mathcal{S}'(\mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^d) \mapsto \mathcal{S}'(\mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^d)$ . An easy calculation shows that  $P$  and  $i\partial_t + \Delta$  commutes:

$$\begin{aligned} [P; i\partial_t + \Delta] &= (x + 2it\nabla)(i\partial_t + \Delta) - (i\partial_t + \Delta)(x + 2it\nabla) \\ &= -i\partial_t(2it)\nabla - 2\nabla = 0, \end{aligned}$$

and

$$P(t)w = 2ite^{i\frac{|x|^2}{4t}} \nabla(e^{-i\frac{|x|^2}{4t}} w), \quad w \in \mathcal{S}'(\mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^d), \quad t \neq 0. \quad (2.42)$$

If  $G = S(t)g$ ,  $g \in \Sigma$  solves the free Schrödinger equation  $i\partial_t G + \Delta G = 0$ ,  $G|_{t=0} = g$ , then  $P(t)G$  satisfies also the free Schrödinger equation with the initial data  $xg$  which itself has a unique solution  $S(t)(xg)$ . Therefore we have

$$P(t)S(t)g = (x + 2it\nabla)S(t)g = S(t)xg, \quad (2.43)$$

for  $g \in \Sigma$ . If  $g \in \Sigma$ , then  $S(t)g \in \Sigma$  for any  $t \in \mathbb{R}$ :

$$xS(t)g = -2it\nabla S(t)g + S(t)(xg) \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^d), \quad \forall g \in \Sigma,$$

and  $P(t)S(t)g = S(t)(xg) \in L_t^q(L^r)$  for  $(q, r)$  admissible exponent pair by Strichartz estimate.

We can also show  $S(t) : \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^d) \mapsto \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^d)$  by use of (2.43). Indeed,  $S(t) : H^\infty(\mathbb{R}^d) \mapsto H^\infty(\mathbb{R}^d)$ ,  $H^\infty(\mathbb{R}^d) = \bigcap_{k \geq 0} H^k(\mathbb{R}^d)$  and hence by (2.43), for any  $t \in \mathbb{R}$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} xS(t)g &= (P - 2it\nabla)S(t)g = S(t)(xg) - 2it\nabla S(t)g \in H^\infty(\mathbb{R}^d), \\ x_j x_k S(t)g &= x_j(S(t)(x_k g) - 2it\partial_{x_k} S(t)g) \\ &= S(t)(x_j x_k g) - 2it\partial_{x_j} S(t)(x_k g) - 2itx_j \partial_{x_k} S(t)g \in H^\infty(\mathbb{R}^d), \dots \end{aligned}$$

Therefore (2.43) holds for all  $g \in \mathcal{S}'(\mathbb{R}^d)$ .

**Theorem 2.10.** *Let  $p \in (1, 2^* - 1)$  be  $H^1$  subcritical exponent. Let  $\kappa = \pm 1$ . Let  $u_0 \in \Sigma$ . Then the Cauchy problem (NLS) is locally well-posed in  $\Sigma$ , such that there exists a positive time  $T$  depending only on  $\|u_0\|_{H^1}, p, d$ , a unique solution  $u \in C([-T, T]; \Sigma) \cap L^q([-T, T]; W^{1, \rho})$ ,  $Pu \in L^q([-T, T]; L^\rho)$  with admissible exponent pair  $(q, \rho)$  and a neighbourhood of  $u_0$  in  $\Sigma$  such that the flow map is Lipschitz continuous on it. Furthermore, the global well-posedness result holds true under the four assumptions in Theorem 2.9.*

*Sketchy proof.* We apply  $S(-t)$  on both the left and right sides of (2.43):  $P(t)S(t) = S(t)x$  such that  $S(-t)P(t) = xS(-t)$  and hence

$$\begin{aligned} P(t)S(t-t') &= P(t)S(t)S(-t') = S(t)xS(-t') \\ &= S(t)S(-t')P(t') = S(t-t')P(t') \text{ on } \mathcal{S}'(\mathbb{R}^d). \end{aligned}$$

Recalling the nonlinear mapping  $\Psi$  given in (2.29), if

$$u \in Z_T(R, R_1) = \{u \in C([-T, T]; \Sigma) \mid \|u\|_{L_T^q W^{1, \rho}} \leq R, \|Pu\|_{L_T^q L^\rho} \leq R_1\},$$

for some admissible exponent pair  $(q, \rho)$  given in Theorem 2.8, then we derive that

$$\begin{aligned} P(t)\Psi u &= P(t)S(t)u_0 - i\kappa \int_0^t P(t)S(t-t')(|u|^{p-1}u)(t')dt' \\ &= S(t)(xu_0) - i\kappa \int_0^t S(t-t')P(t')(|u|^{p-1}u)(t')dt'. \end{aligned} \tag{2.44}$$

By virtue of (2.42), we derive for  $t \neq 0$ ,

$$|P(|u|^{p-1}u)| = 2|t| |\nabla(e^{-i\frac{|x|^2}{4t}} |u|^{p-1}u)| = 2|t| \left| \nabla \left( e^{-i\frac{|x|^2}{4t}} |u|^{p-1} (e^{-i\frac{|x|^2}{4t}} u) \right) \right|,$$

and hence

$$\|P(|u|^{p-1}u)\|_{L_T^{q'} L^{\rho'}} \leq \left\| 2p|t| |u|^{p-1} |\nabla(e^{-i\frac{|x|^2}{4t}} u)| \right\|_{L_T^{q'} L^{\rho'}},$$

which is, by virtue of (2.42) again, bounded by

$$\left\| p|u|^{p-1}|Pu| \right\|_{L_T^{q'} L^{\rho'}}.$$

As in the proof of Theorem 2.8, for  $d \geq 3$  we have

$$\|P(|u|^{p-1}u)\|_{L_T^{q'} L^{\rho'}} \leq p \| |u|^{p-1}Pu \|_{L_T^{q'} L^{\rho'}} \leq CT^{\frac{1}{q'} - \frac{p}{q}} \|u\|_{L_T^q(W^{1,\rho})}^{p-1} \|Pu\|_{L_T^q L^\rho},$$

and hence we can choose  $R = C\|u_0\|_{H_x^1}$ ,  $R_1 = C\|xu_0\|_{L_x^2}$ ,  $T = C^{-1}\|u_0\|_{H_x^1}^{-\theta}$  for  $C$  sufficiently large such that  $\Psi$  is a contraction mapping in  $Z_T(R, R_1)$ .  $\square$

**Remark 2.10.** *Noticing (2.42), we can proceed by a recurrence argument to arrive at*

$$P_\alpha = (x + 2itD)^\alpha = (2it)^{|\alpha|} e^{i|x|^2/4t} D^\alpha (e^{-i|x|^2/4t}), \quad [P_\alpha; i\partial_t + \Delta] = 0.$$

Based on the property of the operator  $P_\alpha$ , e.g.  $d = 1$ ,  $p = 3$ ,

$$\|P_m(|u|^2u)\|_{L_x^2} \leq C_m \|u\|_{L_x^\infty}^2 \|P_m u\|_{L_x^2}, \quad \|u\|_{L_x^\infty} \leq t^{-\frac{1}{2}} \|Pu\|_{L_x^2}^{\frac{1}{2}} \|u\|_{L_x^2}^{\frac{1}{2}},$$

[Hayashi-Nakamitsu-Tsutsumi 1986-1988] proved that if  $p$  is an odd integer,  $u_0 \in H^m(\mathbb{R}^d) \cap L^2(|x|^k dx)$ ,  $m \geq k$ , then the regularity and the decay property are both preserved on the existence time interval. In particular, if  $u_0 \in \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^d)$ , then the solution of (NLS)  $u(t, \cdot) \in \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^d)$  on the existence time interval.

## 3 Large time behaviour

### 3.1 Virial and Morawetz identities

#### 3.1.1 Pohozaev's identity

We first introduce the Pohozaev's Identity

$$\begin{aligned} \operatorname{Re} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} \Delta \bar{u} (x \cdot \nabla u) \, dx &= \left(\frac{d}{2} - 1\right) \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |\nabla u|^2 \, dx, \quad \forall u \in \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^d), \\ \text{or equivalently, } \operatorname{Re} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} \Delta \bar{u} \left(\frac{d}{2}u + x \cdot \nabla u\right) \, dx &= - \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |\nabla u|^2 \, dx, \end{aligned} \tag{3.1}$$

where  $|\nabla u|^2 = \sum_{j=1}^d ((\partial_{x_j} \operatorname{Re} u)^2 + (\partial_{x_j} \operatorname{Im} u)^2)$ . Indeed, noticing

$$\begin{aligned} \partial_{x_j} (x \cdot \nabla u) &= \partial_{x_j} \sum_{k=1}^d (x_k \cdot \partial_{x_k} u) = \partial_{x_j} u + x \cdot \nabla (\partial_{x_j} u), \\ \text{i.e. } \nabla (x \cdot \nabla u) &= \nabla u + x \cdot \nabla (\nabla u), \end{aligned}$$

we apply integration by parts to arrive at

$$\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{Re} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} \Delta \bar{u} (x \cdot \nabla u) \, dx &= -\operatorname{Re} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} \nabla \bar{u} \cdot \nabla (x \cdot \nabla u) \\
&= -\int_{\mathbb{R}^d} (|\nabla u|^2 + \operatorname{Re} \sum_{j=1}^d \partial_{x_j} \bar{u} (x \cdot \nabla) (\partial_{x_j} u)) \, dx \\
&= -\int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |\nabla u|^2 \, dx - \frac{1}{2} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} (x \cdot \nabla) |\nabla u|^2 \, dx,
\end{aligned}$$

which together with integration by parts again implies (3.1).

[01.12.2017]  
[08.12.2017]

### 3.1.2 The Virial and Morawetz identities

We define the virial potential

$$V(u) = \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |x|^2 |u|^2 \, dx, \quad (3.2)$$

which averages the mass density (with the mass defined in (1.8)) against the weight function  $|x|^2$ . We define the associated Morawetz action

$$W(u) = \operatorname{Im} \sum_{j=1}^d \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} x_j (\bar{u} \partial_{x_j} u) \, dx \equiv \operatorname{Im} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} r (\bar{u} \partial_r u) \, dx, \quad r = |x|, \quad (3.3)$$

which averages the momentum densities (with the momentum defined in (1.9)) against the weights  $(x_j)$ .

Then we have the following Virial and Morawetz identities

**Proposition 3.1.** *Let  $u(t, x)$  be a Schwartz solution of the Cauchy problem (NLS). Then*

$$\frac{1}{4} \frac{d}{dt} V(u(t)) = W(u(t)), \quad (3.4)$$

and

$$\frac{1}{2} \frac{d}{dt} W(u(t)) = \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |\nabla u|^2 \, dx + \kappa \left( \frac{d}{2} - \frac{d}{p+1} \right) \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |u|^{p+1} \, dx. \quad (3.5)$$

*Proof.* We recall the nonlinear Schrödinger equation in (NLS):

$$i \partial_t u + \Delta u = \kappa |u|^{p-1} u.$$

We test the equation by  $|x|^2\bar{u}$  and take the imaginary part to get

$$\frac{1}{2} \frac{d}{dt} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |x|^2 |u|^2 dx + \operatorname{Im} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |x|^2 \operatorname{div} (\nabla u \bar{u}) dx = 0.$$

Integration by parts ensures

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |x|^2 \operatorname{div} (\nabla u \bar{u}) dx = -2 \sum_{j=1}^d \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} x_j (\partial_{x_j} u \bar{u}) dx.$$

Hence (3.4) follows.

We test the nonlinear Schrödinger equation in (NLS) by  $r\partial_r\bar{u}$  to get:

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}^d} ir\partial_t u \partial_r \bar{u} dx + \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} r\Delta u \partial_r \bar{u} dx = \kappa \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} r|u|^{p-1} u \partial_r \bar{u} dx.$$

We calculate the real parts of the integrals in the above identity one by one:

$$\begin{aligned} \operatorname{Re} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} ir\partial_t u \partial_r \bar{u} dx &= \frac{1}{2} \sum_{j=1}^d \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} ix_j (\partial_t u \partial_{x_j} \bar{u} - \partial_t \bar{u} \partial_{x_j} u) dx \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} i(-d)\partial_t u \bar{u} dx - \frac{1}{2} \sum_{j=1}^d \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} ix_j (\partial_t \partial_{x_j} u \bar{u} + \partial_t \bar{u} \partial_{x_j} u) dx \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} (-d)(-\Delta u + \kappa|u|^{p-1}u)\bar{u} dx - \frac{1}{2} \frac{d}{dt} \sum_{j=1}^d \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} ix_j \partial_{x_j} u \bar{u} dx \\ &= -\frac{1}{2} \frac{d}{dt} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} ir\partial_r u \bar{u} dx - \frac{d}{2} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} (|\nabla u|^2 + \kappa|u|^{p+1}) dx \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \frac{d}{dt} W(u(t)) - \frac{d}{2} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} (|\nabla u|^2 + \kappa|u|^{p+1}) dx, \end{aligned}$$

$$\operatorname{Re} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} r\Delta u \partial_r \bar{u} dx = \left(\frac{d}{2} - 1\right) \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |\nabla u|^2 dx, \text{ by (3.1),}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \kappa \operatorname{Re} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} r|u|^{p-1} u \partial_r \bar{u} dx &= \kappa \frac{1}{2} \sum_{j=1}^d \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} x_j |u|^{p-1} (u \partial_{x_j} \bar{u} + \bar{u} \partial_{x_j} u) dx \\ &= \kappa \frac{1}{2} \sum_{j=1}^d \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} x_j |u|^{p-1} \partial_{x_j} (|u|^2) dx = \kappa \frac{1}{p+1} \sum_{j=1}^d \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} x_j \partial_{x_j} (|u|^{p+1}) dx \\ &= -\kappa \frac{d}{p+1} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |u|^{p+1} dx. \end{aligned}$$

Thus (3.5) follows. □



**Remark 3.1.** We can define instead the Virial potential and Morawetz action, with the weights  $|x|^2, (x_j)$  in (3.2) and (3.3) replaced by the new weights  $|x|, (\frac{x_j}{|x|})$  respectively:

$$\mathcal{V}(u) = \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |x| |u|^2 dx,$$

$$\mathcal{W}(u) = \text{Im} \sum_{j=1}^d \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} \frac{x_j}{|x|} (\bar{u} \partial_{x_j} u) dx.$$

Then we have the following identities (Lin-Strauss' Morawetz Identities) for the Schwartz solution  $u$  of the Cauchy problem (NLS):

$$\frac{1}{2} \frac{d}{dt} \mathcal{V}(u(t)) = \mathcal{W}(u(t)),$$

$$\frac{d}{dt} \mathcal{W}(u(t)) = \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} \frac{|\nabla u|^2}{|x|} dx + \kappa \frac{2(d-1)(p-1)}{p+1} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} \frac{|u|^{p+1}}{|x|} dx - \frac{1}{4} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} (\Delta^2 |x|) |u|^2 dx,$$

where  $\nabla := \nabla - \frac{x}{|x|} (\frac{x}{|x|} \cdot \nabla)$  denotes the angular gradient.

**Corollary 3.1.** Let  $p \in (1, 2^* - 1)$  be energy subcritical exponent. Let  $u_0 \in \Sigma$  and let  $u \in C([-T, T]; H^1)$ ,  $T < \infty$  be the solution of (NLS). Then  $u \in C([-T, T]; \Sigma) \cap L^q([-T, T]; W^{1,\rho})$ ,  $Pu \in L^q([-T, T]; L^\rho)$  for any admissible exponent pair  $(q, \rho)$ , and the mass and energy conservation laws as well as the virial and Morawetz identities (3.4)-(3.5) hold for  $u$  on the existence time interval  $[-T, T]$ : For any  $t \in [-T, T]$ ,

$$M(u(t)) = M(u_0), \quad E(u(t)) = E(u_0),$$

$$\frac{1}{4} V(u(t)) - \frac{1}{4} V(u_0) = \int_0^t W(u(t')) dt',$$

$$\frac{1}{2} W(u(t)) - \frac{1}{2} W(u_0) = \int_0^t \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |\nabla u|^2 dx dt + \kappa \left( \frac{d}{2} - \frac{d}{p+1} \right) \int_0^t \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |u|^{p+1} dx dt.$$

*Sketchy proof.* Recalling the proof of Theorem 2.10, there exists  $T_0 > 0$  depending only on  $\|u\|_{L_T^\infty(H^1)}$  such that there exists a unique solution  $\tilde{u} \in C([t_0 - T_0, t_0 + T_0]; \Sigma) \cap L^q([t_0 - T_0, t_0 + T_0]; W^{1,\rho})$ ,  $P\tilde{u} \in L^q([t_0 - T_0, t_0 + T_0]; L^\rho)$  for any  $t_0 \in [-T, T]$ , and hence by uniqueness  $u = \tilde{u}$  on  $[-T, T]$ .

We do a regularisation argument and repeat the proof of Proposition 3.1 to arrive at the identities (3.4)-(3.5) for  $u$  on  $[-T, T]$ . We test the regularised equation

$$i \partial_t u_{m,n} + \Delta u_{m,n} = \kappa (|u|^{p-1} u)_{m,n},$$

by  $|x|^2 \bar{u}_{m,n}$ , take the imaginary part to arrive at

$$\begin{aligned} & \frac{1}{2} \frac{d}{dt} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |x|^2 |u_{m,n}|^2 dx - 2 \operatorname{Im} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} \bar{u}_{m,n} x \cdot \nabla u_{m,n} dx \\ &= \operatorname{Im} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} \kappa(|u|^{p-1} u)_{m,n} |x|^2 \bar{u}_{m,n} dx, \end{aligned}$$

and pass to the limit to arrive at (3.4) for  $u$ . Similarly, we test the regularised equation by  $r \partial_r \bar{u}$ , take the real part to arrive at

$$\begin{aligned} & \frac{1}{2} \frac{d}{dt} \operatorname{Im} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} \bar{u}_{m,n} (x \cdot \nabla) u_{m,n} dx - \frac{d}{2} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |\nabla u_{m,n}|^2 + \kappa(|u|^{p-1} u)_{m,n} \bar{u}_{m,n} dx \\ &+ \left(\frac{d}{2} - 1\right) \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |\nabla u_{m,n}|^2 dx = \operatorname{Re} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} (x \cdot \nabla) \bar{u}_{m,n} \kappa(|u|^{p-1} u)_{m,n} dx, \end{aligned}$$

and pass to the limit to arrive at (3.5) for  $u$ .  $\square$

## 3.2 Blowup and scattering

### 3.2.1 Blowup

**Theorem 3.1** (Blowup for the focusing case). *Let  $s_c \in [0, 1)$ , i.e.  $1 + \frac{4}{d} \leq p < 2^* - 1$ . Let  $\kappa = -1$ . Let  $u_0 \in \Sigma$  with the initial energy  $E(u_0) < 0$ .*

*Then the unique solution  $u(t, x)$  obtained in Theorem 2.10 blows up in finite time, and more precisely there exists  $T^* < +\infty$  such that*

$$\lim_{t \uparrow T^*} \|\nabla u(t)\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)} = +\infty.$$

*Proof.* We consider positive time in the following and the negative time can be treated similarly.

If the solution  $u \in C((a, b); H^1(\mathbb{R}^d))$  on some time interval  $(a, b)$ , then by the virial and Morawetz identities (3.4)-(3.5), we derive that

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{16} \frac{d^2}{dt^2} V(u) &= \frac{1}{2} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |\nabla u|^2 dx - \frac{1}{2} \left(\frac{d}{2} - \frac{d}{p+1}\right) \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |u|^{p+1} dx \\ &= E(u) - \frac{1}{2} \left(\frac{d}{2} - \frac{d+2}{p+1}\right) \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |u|^{p+1} dx \leq E(u_0) < 0, \end{aligned} \tag{3.6}$$

since  $\frac{d}{2} - \frac{d+2}{p+1} = (d+2) \left(\frac{1}{2+\frac{4}{d}} - \frac{1}{p+1}\right) \geq 0$  if  $p \geq 1 + \frac{4}{d}$  is mass supercritical. Hence if  $u \in C([0, \infty); H^1(\mathbb{R}^d))$ , then the time-dependent quantity  $V(u(t)) = \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |x|^2 |u|^2 dx$  is below a parabola which is negative in finite positive time which is not possible. Thus  $u$  blows up at some finite positive time.

More precisely, if  $p > 1 + \frac{4}{d}$ , we can calculate on the existence time interval

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{16} \frac{d^2}{dt^2} V(u) &= \frac{1}{4} \frac{d}{dt} W(u(t)) \\ &= \left[ \frac{1}{2} - \frac{d}{4} \left( \frac{p+1}{2} - 1 \right) \right] \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |\nabla u|^2 dx + \frac{d}{2} \left( \frac{p+1}{2} - 1 \right) E(u) \\ &< -\alpha \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |\nabla u|^2 dx, \end{aligned}$$

where  $\alpha = -\frac{1}{2} + \frac{d}{4} \left( \frac{p+1}{2} - 1 \right) = \frac{d}{8} (p - 1 - \frac{4}{d}) > 0$ .

If initially  $W(u_0) < 0$ , then  $W(u(t)) < 0$ . Thus  $\frac{d}{dt} V(u) < 0$  and  $V(u)(t) \leq V(u_0)$ . Since

$$|W(u)(t)| = -W(u)(t) \leq \|ru\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)} \|\nabla u\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)} \leq (V(u_0))^{\frac{1}{2}} \|\nabla u\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)},$$

we derive that

$$\frac{1}{4} \frac{d}{dt} (-W(u)) > \alpha (V(u_0))^{-1} (-W(u))^2,$$

and hence

$$(V(u_0))^{\frac{1}{2}} \|\nabla u\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)} \geq -W(u) \geq \frac{V(u_0)(-W(u_0))}{V(u_0) + 4\alpha W(u_0)t}$$

from which we derive that  $\lim_{t \uparrow T^*} \|\nabla u(t)\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)} = \infty$  with  $T^* = (-4\alpha W(u_0))^{-1} V(u_0)$ .

If initially  $W(u_0) \geq 0$ , then by virtue of (3.6), there exists a positive time  $t_0$  such that  $W(u)(t_0) < 0$  and we are in the previous case again.

If  $p = 1 + \frac{4}{d}$ , then (3.6) gives

$$\frac{1}{16} \frac{d^2}{dt^2} V(u) = \frac{1}{4} \frac{d}{dt} W(u) = E(u_0) < 0.$$

Thus

$$W(u)(t) = W(u_0) + 4E(u_0)t, \quad V(u)(t) = V(u_0) + 4W(u_0)t + 8E(u_0)t^2,$$

and hence there exists a positive time  $T^* > 0$  such that  $V(u)(T^*) = 0$ . By the equality  $\|f\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)}^2 = -\frac{1}{d} \sum_{j=1}^d \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} x_j \partial_{x_j} (|f|^2) dx$  for  $f \in \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^d)$ , we derive the Heisenberg's inequality

$$\|f\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)}^2 \leq \frac{2}{d} \sum_{j=1}^d \|x_j f\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)} \|\partial_{x_j} f\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)}, \quad \forall f \in \Sigma.$$

Therefore

$$0 < \|u_0\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)}^2 = \|u(t)\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)}^2 \leq \frac{2}{d} (V(u))^{\frac{1}{2}} \|\nabla u\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)},$$

which together with  $V(u)(T^*) = 0$  implies  $\lim_{t \rightarrow T^*} \|\nabla u\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)} = \infty$ .  $\square$

**Remark 3.2.** *The time  $T^*$  gives indeed an upper bound for the life span and the solution may blow up before  $T^*$ . We can also make use of the norm  $\|u\|_{L^q}$  for  $q \geq p + 1$  instead of  $\|\nabla u\|_{L^2}$  in the estimate of the lifespan.*

**Remark 3.3.** *In the mass critical case  $p = 1 + \frac{4}{d}$ , we can assume the following assumptions instead of  $E(u_0) < 0$ :*

- $E(u_0) \leq 0$  and  $W(u_0) < 0$ ;
- $E(u_0) > 0$  and  $W(u_0) < -\sqrt{E(u_0)V_0(u_0)}$ .

**Corollary 3.2.** *Let  $d \geq 3$ ,  $1 + \frac{4}{d} \leq p < 1 + \frac{4}{d-2}$  and  $u_0 \in H^1(\mathbb{R}^d)$ . Let  $u(t, x)$  be the solution of the Cauchy problem (NLS) satisfying  $\lim_{t \uparrow T^*} \|\nabla u(t)\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)} = +\infty$ , then*

$$\|\nabla u(t)\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)} \geq C_0(T^* - t)^{-\left(\frac{1}{p-1} - \frac{d-2}{4}\right)}, \quad \forall t \in [0, T^*).$$

*Proof.* Recall the proof of Theorem 2.8. For any time  $t_0 < T^*$  with  $\|u(t_0)\|_{H^1(\mathbb{R}^d)} < \infty$ , the solution  $u$  with  $\|u\|_{L^\infty([t_0, t_0+T]; H^1(\mathbb{R}^d))} \leq R := C\|u(t_0)\|_{H^1(\mathbb{R}^d)}$  exists at least on the time interval  $[t_0, t_0 + T]$ ,  $T > 0$  with

$$T = C^{-1}\|u(t_0)\|_{H^1(\mathbb{R}^d)}^{-\frac{4}{d-2} \frac{p-1}{1+\frac{4}{d-2}-p}} = C^{-1}\|u(t_0)\|_{H^1(\mathbb{R}^d)}^{-\frac{1}{\frac{p-1}{p-1}-\frac{d-2}{4}}}.$$

Hence

$$T^* - t_0 > T \text{ i.e. } \|u(t_0)\|_{H^1(\mathbb{R}^d)} \geq C(T^* - t_0)^{-\left(\frac{1}{p-1} - \frac{d-2}{4}\right)}.$$

□

**Remark 3.4** (Blow up rates for the case  $p = 1 + \frac{4}{d}$ ,  $\kappa = -1$ ).

***Pseudo-conformal blow up rate***

*Recall the pseudoconformal invariance in the mass critical case that if  $u = u(t, x)$  is a solution of the nonlinear Schrödinger equation (NLS), then so is  $v(t, x) = \frac{e^{i|x|^2/4t}}{|t|^{\frac{d}{2}}} u\left(\frac{x}{t}, \frac{1}{t}\right)$ . If  $u_0 \in \Sigma$ , then for any  $t \neq 0$ ,  $v(t, \cdot) \in \Sigma$ .*

*Let  $u(t, x) = e^{it}Q(x)$  be the solitary solution of the focusing (NLS), then  $v(t, x) = \frac{e^{i(|x|^2+4)/4t}}{|t|^{\frac{d}{2}}} Q\left(\frac{x}{t}\right)$  is also a solution in  $\Sigma$  for any  $t \neq 0$ , while blows up at  $t = 0$ :  $\|\nabla v(t)\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)} = O(1/t)$  as  $t \rightarrow 0$ .*

*Indeed [Merle 1993] showed that the above is the unique minimal mass blow up solution: Let  $p = 1 + \frac{4}{d}$ ,  $\kappa = -1$  and  $u$  be the solution of (NLS) with the initial data  $u_0 \in H^1(\mathbb{R}^d)$  and  $\|u_0\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)} = \|Q\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)}$ . If  $\lim_{t \uparrow T} \|\nabla u(t)\|_{L^2} = \infty$ , then up to the symmetries in Subsection 1.1.3*

$$u(t, x) = \frac{e^{i(|x|^2+4)/4(T-t)}}{(T-t)^{\frac{d}{2}}} Q\left(\frac{x}{T-t}\right).$$

Let  $d = 1, 2$ ,  $p = 1 + \frac{4}{d}$ ,  $\kappa = -1$ ,  $w_0 \in H^1(\mathbb{R}^d)$  such that  $\|w_0\|_{L^2} = \|Q\|_{L^2} + \varepsilon$  and  $\lim_{t \uparrow T} \|\nabla w(t)\|_{L^2} = \infty$ . [Bourgain-Wang 1997] showed that  $w = u + \varphi$ , where  $u$  is as above and  $\varphi$  remains smooth after the blow up time.

[Merle 1990 CMP] also proved that for any given  $T > 0$ , any set of fixed points  $\{x_1, \dots, x_k\}$  in  $\mathbb{R}^d$ , there exists an initial data  $u_0$  such that the corresponding solution of the focusing mass critical (NLS) blows up exactly at time  $T$  with the total mass concentrating at the points  $\{x_1, \dots, x_k\}$ .

### log-log blow up rate

Corollary 3.2 implies that the blow up rate is at least  $\|\nabla u(t)\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)} \geq C(T^* - t)^{-\frac{1}{2}}$  in the mass critical case. Indeed, the numerical simulation suggests the existence of solutions with log-log blow up rate  $\left(\frac{\ln|\ln|T^*-t||}{T^*-t}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}}$ . And when  $d = 1$ , [Perelman 2001] established the existence of a solution with log-log blow up rate.

[Raphaël 2005] proved that there is a universal gap between the above two blowup rates: Let  $\|u_0\|_{L^2} \in (\|Q\|_{L^2}, \|Q\|_{L^2} + \varepsilon)$  for  $\varepsilon \ll 1$ . Let  $u$  be the corresponding blowup solution, then either  $u$  blows up at log-log rate, or  $u$  blows up faster than pseudo-conformal rate, i.e.  $\|\nabla u(t)\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)} \geq C(T^* - t)^{-1}$ . However, the existence of blowup solutions with blowup rate different from these two cases is still open.

[08.12.2017]  
[15.12.2017]

## 3.2.2 Scattering

**Theorem 3.2.** Let  $1 + \frac{4}{d} \leq p < 2^* - 1$  and  $\kappa = 1$ . Let  $u_0 \in \Sigma$  and  $u \in C(\mathbb{R}; \Sigma)$  be the global-in-time solution of (NLS) given in Theorem 2.10. Then

$$u \in C(\mathbb{R}; \Sigma) \cap L^q(\mathbb{R}; W^{1,\rho}(\mathbb{R}^d)), \text{ with } (q, \rho) \text{ admissible exponent pair,}$$

and  $u$  scatters at large time in the sense that there exist two functions  $u_{\pm} \in \Sigma$  such that

$$\lim_{t \rightarrow \pm\infty} \|u(t, \cdot) - e^{it\Delta} u_{\pm}\|_{\Sigma} = 0.$$

*Proof.* We just show the case  $t \rightarrow +\infty$  and the case  $t \rightarrow -\infty$  follows similarly.

### Step 1 Pointwise decay

Consider the time-dependent function

$$\begin{aligned}
F(t) &= \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |xu + 2it\nabla u|^2 dx + \frac{8t^2}{p+1} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |u|^{p+1} dx \\
&= \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |x|^2 |u|^2 dx - 4t \operatorname{Im} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} x \cdot \nabla u \bar{u} dx + 8t^2 E(u) \\
&= V(u) - 4tW(u) + 8t^2 E(u_0),
\end{aligned}$$

where  $V(u), W(u), E(u)$  are the Virial potential, Morawetz action and the energy defined in (3.2), (3.3) and (1.10) respectively. By view of the virial and Morawetz identities (3.4)-(3.5), we have

$$\frac{d}{dt} F(t) = \frac{4dt}{p+1} \left[1 + \frac{4}{d} - p\right] \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |u|^{p+1} dx \leq 0, \quad \text{if } p \geq 1 + \frac{4}{d}.$$

Let  $v(t, x) = e^{-i|x|^2/4t} u(t, x)$ , then

$$Pu = (x + 2it\nabla)u = 2ite^{i\frac{|x|^2}{4t}} \nabla v,$$

and we have

$$\begin{aligned}
8t^2 E(v) &= 4t^2 \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |\nabla v|^2 dx + \frac{8t^2}{p+1} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |v|^{p+1} dx = F(t) \\
&\leq F(0) = V(u_0).
\end{aligned}$$

Hence we have the following pointwise in time decay rate

$$\|\nabla v(t)\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)} \leq (2t)^{-1} (V(u_0))^{\frac{1}{2}}.$$

By Gagliardo-Nirenberg's inequality in Corollary 2.1 and the mass conservation law

$$\|v(t)\|_{L_x^2} = \|u(t)\|_{L_x^2} = \|u_0\|_{L_x^2} = \|v_0\|_{L_x^2},$$

we have the following pointwise decay rate for  $\|u\|_{L_x^r(\mathbb{R}^d)}$ ,  $r \in [2, 2^*]$  (in comparison with (1.4) for the linear Schrödinger group  $S(t)$ )

$$\begin{aligned}
\|u(t)\|_{L^r(\mathbb{R}^d)} &= \|v(t)\|_{L^r(\mathbb{R}^d)} \leq C \|v(t)\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)}^{1 - (\frac{d}{2} - \frac{d}{r})} \|\nabla v(t)\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)}^{\frac{d}{2} - \frac{d}{r}} \\
&\leq C |t|^{-(\frac{d}{2} - \frac{d}{r})} \|u_0\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)}^{1 - (\frac{d}{2} - \frac{d}{r})} (V(u_0))^{\frac{1}{2}(\frac{d}{2} - \frac{d}{r})}, \quad \forall r \in [2, 2^*].
\end{aligned} \tag{3.7}$$

### Step 2 Scattering in $L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)$

Recall the Duhamel's formula (Duhamel) for the globally defined solution  $u(t, x)$  of (NLS). Then  $w(t, \cdot) = S(-t)u(t, \cdot) \in H_x^1(\mathbb{R}^d)$  satisfies

$$w(t) = u_0 - i \int_0^t S(-t'') (|u|^{p-1}u)(t'') dt''.$$

Then for any  $0 < t' < t$ ,

$$w(t) - w(t') = -i \int_{t'}^t S(-t'') (|u|^{p-1}u)(t'') dt'', \quad (3.8)$$

such that by Strichartz estimate (2.28)

$$\|w(t) - w(t')\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)} \leq C \| |u|^{p-1}u \|_{L^{q'}([t',t];L^{r'})} = C \left\| \|u\|_{L^{pr'}(\mathbb{R}^d)}^p \right\|_{L^{q'}([t',t])}$$

where  $(q, r)$  could be any admissible exponent pair. By use of the pointwise decay (3.7) in Step 1, we choose  $r = p + 1 < 2^*$ ,  $\frac{2}{q} = \frac{d}{2} - \frac{d}{p+1}$  to arrive at

$$\|w(t) - w(t')\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)} \leq C_0 \left\| (t'')^{-\left(\frac{d}{2} - \frac{d}{p+1}\right)p} \right\|_{L^{q'}([t',t])} = C_0 \left( \int_{t'}^t (t'')^{-\frac{2pq'}{q}} dt'' \right)^{\frac{1}{q'}},$$

where  $C_0$  is some constant depending on the initial data  $\|u_0\|_{\Sigma}$ . If  $p \geq 1 + \frac{4}{d}$  then  $q \leq 2 + \frac{4}{d}$  such that  $\frac{2p}{q} > 1$ . Hence  $\|w(t) - w(t')\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)} \rightarrow 0$  whenever  $t', t \rightarrow \infty$ . Therefore there exists  $u_+ \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)$  such that  $\|u(t) - S(t)u_+\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)} = \|w(t) - u_+\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)} \rightarrow 0$  as  $t \rightarrow +\infty$ .

### Step 3 Scattering in $H^1(\mathbb{R}^d)$

We first claim that  $u \in L^q([0, \infty); W^{1,p+1})$ . Indeed, we have already shown  $u \in L^q_{\text{loc}}(\mathbb{R}; W^{1,p+1})$  in Theorem 2.9 such that  $\|u\|_{L^q([0,T];W^{1,p+1})} \leq C(T) < \infty$  for any finite time  $T > 0$ . For any  $t \geq T > 0$ , by applying Strichartz estimates on the Duhamel's formula (Duhamel) (and also on the spatial derivative of (Duhamel)), we have

$$\begin{aligned} \|u\|_{L^q([0,t];W^{1,p+1})} &\leq C \|u_0\|_{H_x^1} + C \| |u|^{p-1}u \|_{L^{q'}([0,T];W^{1,\frac{p+1}{p}})} + C \| |u|^{p-1}u \|_{L^{q'}([T,t];W^{1,\frac{p+1}{p}})} \\ &\leq C \|u_0\|_{H_x^1} + CT^{\frac{1}{q'} - \frac{p}{q}} \|u\|_{L^q([0,T];W^{1,p+1})}^p + C \| |u|^{p-1}u \|_{L_x^{p+1}} \|u\|_{W_x^{1,p+1}} \|u\|_{L^{q'}([T,t])} \\ &\leq C \|u_0\|_{H_x^1} + CT^{1 - \frac{p+1}{q}} \|u\|_{L^q([0,T];W^{1,p+1})}^p \\ &\quad + C_0 \left\| (t'')^{-\frac{2}{q}(p-1)} \right\|_{L^{(\frac{1}{q'} - \frac{1}{q})^{-1}}([T,t])} \|u\|_{L^q([T,t];W_x^{1,p+1})}, \end{aligned}$$

where we used the pointwise decay estimate (3.7) for the last inequality and we now calculate

$$\begin{aligned} \left\| (t'')^{-\frac{2}{q}(p-1)} \right\|_{L^{(\frac{1}{q'} - \frac{1}{q})^{-1}}([T,t])} &= C(T^{-\theta} - t^{-\theta}) \leq CT^{-\theta} \\ \text{with } \theta &= \frac{2}{q}(p-1) - \left(\frac{1}{q'} - \frac{1}{q}\right) = \frac{2}{q}p - 1 > 0 \text{ when } p \geq 1 + \frac{4}{d}. \end{aligned}$$

Hence by choosing  $T$  large enough such that  $C_0CT^{-\theta} \leq \frac{1}{2}$ , we have

$$\|u\|_{L^q([0,t];W^{1,p+1})} \leq C \|u_0\|_{H_x^1} + CT^{1 - \frac{p+1}{q}} \|u\|_{L^q([0,T];W^{1,p+1})}^p \leq C(T) < \infty,$$

and as  $t \rightarrow \infty$  we derive  $u \in L^q([0, \infty); W^{1,p+1})$ .

We apply spatial derivative and then Strichartz estimate and finally the decay rate (3.7) to (3.8), to arrive at

$$\begin{aligned} \|\nabla(w(t) - w(t'))\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)} &\leq C \left\| \|u\|_{L^{p+1}(\mathbb{R}^d)}^{p-1} \|\nabla u\|_{L^{p+1}(\mathbb{R}^d)} \right\|_{L^{q'}([t', t])} \\ &\leq C_0 \left\| (t'')^{-\frac{2}{q}(p-1)} \right\|_{L^{(\frac{1}{q'} - \frac{1}{q})^{-1}}([t', t])} \|\nabla u\|_{L^q([t', t]; L^{p+1}(\mathbb{R}^d))} \end{aligned}$$

which tends to zero whenever  $t', t \rightarrow \infty$ . Therefore  $u_+ \in H^1(\mathbb{R}^d)$  such that  $\|u(t) - S(t)u_+\|_{H^1(\mathbb{R}^d)} = \|w(t) - u_+\|_{H^1(\mathbb{R}^d)} \rightarrow 0$  as  $t \rightarrow +\infty$ .

#### Step 4 Scattering in $\Sigma$

Recall (2.44) when we apply the operator  $P = x + 2it\nabla$  to (Duhamel). Then the same argument as in Step 3 implies that

$$\|(x + 2it\nabla)u\|_{L^q([0, \infty); L^{p+1})} < +\infty,$$

and hence by  $xS(-t) = S(-t)P(t)$ , we arrive at from (3.8) that

$$\begin{aligned} \|(xw)(t) - (xw)(t')\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)} &= \left\| \int_{t'}^t S(-t') (P(|u|^{p-1}u))(t'') dt'' \right\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)} \\ &\leq C \left\| |u|^{p-1} |Pu| \right\|_{L^{q'}([t', t]; L^{(p+1)'})} \rightarrow 0 \text{ as } t', t \rightarrow \infty. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore  $\|xw(t) - xu_+\|_{L_x^2(\mathbb{R}^d)} \rightarrow 0$  as  $t \rightarrow \infty$ .  $\square$

**Remark 3.5.** For  $p \in (1, 1 + \frac{4}{d})$ , then we also have the pointwise decay

$$\|u(t)\|_{L^r(\mathbb{R}^d)} \leq C |t|^{-\left(\frac{d}{2} - \frac{d}{r}\right)(1 - \alpha(r))}, \quad \alpha(r) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } 2 \leq r \leq p+1, \\ \frac{(r-p-1)(4-d(p-1))}{(r-2)(4-(d-2)(p-1))} & \text{if } r > p+1, \end{cases}$$

by considering the time-dependent quantity  $t^2 \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |v|^{p+1} dx$  and then the quantity  $t^2 \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |\nabla v|^2 dx$  via the equality

$$\frac{d}{dt}(8t^2 E(v)) = \frac{d}{dt} F(u) = \frac{4dt}{p+1} \left(1 + \frac{4}{d} - p\right) \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |v|^{p+1} dx.$$

And if we assume furthermore  $p > (2 + d + \sqrt{d^2 + 12d + 4})/(2d)$  such that  $2p > q$ , then the above scattering result also holds true.

Let us give some further remarks concerning the exponent regime of  $p$  in the scattering theory:

- We can relax the restriction on  $p \in (1, 2^* - 1)$  for the scattering results, nevertheless there are no scattering theory in  $L_x^2$  if  $p \leq 1 + \frac{2}{d}$ ;



- For  $p \in (1 + \frac{2}{d}, 2^* - 1)$ ,  $\kappa = 1$ , there exist scattering states in  $L_x^2$ , nevertheless if  $p \leq \frac{2+d+\sqrt{d^2+12d+4}}{2d}$  and  $u_0$  is large or if  $p \leq 1 + \frac{4}{d+2}$  we do not know whether  $u_{\pm} \in \Sigma$ ;
- There is also scattering theory for the focusing case if  $p \in (1 + \frac{4}{d+2}, 1 + \frac{4}{d})$ , nevertheless if  $p < 1 + \frac{4}{d+2}$  there is no scattering theory in  $L^2$ ;
- We can relax the restriction on the initial data, e.g.  $u_0 \in H^1(\mathbb{R}^d)$  such that the scattering theory in the energy space  $H^1(\mathbb{R}^d)$  holds for  $p \in (1 + \frac{4}{d}, 2^* - 1)$ ,  $d \geq 3$ ,  $\kappa = 1$ .

We introduce briefly here the basic notions of scattering theory. Let  $X$  be a Banach space. Let  $\mathcal{R}_{\pm}$  be the following two subsets in  $X$ :

$$\mathcal{R}_{\pm} = \{\varphi \in X \mid (\text{NLS}) \text{ with initial data } \varphi \text{ has a unique solution } u \text{ defined for all } t \geq 0 (t \leq 0) \text{ such that } u_{\pm} = \lim_{t \rightarrow \pm\infty} S(-t)u(t) \text{ exists in } X\},$$

and we call  $u_{\pm}$  the scattering states of  $\varphi$  at  $\pm\infty$ . Let  $U_{\pm}$  be the following two operators

$$U_{\pm} : \mathcal{R}_{\pm} \mapsto X \text{ via } U_{\pm}(\varphi) = u_{\pm} = \lim_{t \rightarrow \pm\infty} S(-t)u(t).$$

If the mapping  $U_{\pm}$  are injective, we define the wave operators

$$\Omega_{\pm} = (U_{\pm})^{-1} : \mathcal{U}_{\pm} \mapsto \mathcal{R}_{\pm}, \quad \mathcal{U}_{\pm} = U_{\pm}(\mathcal{R}_{\pm}) \text{ via } \Omega_{\pm}(u_{\pm}) = \varphi.$$

Let  $\mathcal{O}_{\pm} = U_{\pm}(\mathcal{R}_{+} \cap \mathcal{R}_{-})$  and we define the scattering operator  $\mathbb{S}$

$$\mathbb{S} = U_{+}\Omega_{-} : \mathcal{O}_{-} \mapsto \mathcal{O}_{+} \text{ via } \mathbb{S}u_{-} = u_{+}.$$

Notice that

$$\mathcal{R}_{-} = \overline{\mathcal{R}_{+}} := \{\varphi \mid \bar{\varphi} \in \mathcal{R}_{+}\}, \quad \mathcal{U}_{-} = \overline{\mathcal{U}_{+}}, \quad \mathcal{O}_{-} = \overline{\mathcal{O}_{+}},$$

and if  $\kappa = 0$  the linear Schrödinger equation, then  $U_{\pm} = \Omega_{\pm} = \mathbb{S} = \text{Id}$ .

Let  $X = \Sigma$  and

$$1 + \frac{4}{d} \leq p < 2^* - 1, \quad \kappa = +1. \quad (3.9)$$

Then by Theorem 3.2,

$$\mathcal{R}_{\pm} = \Sigma, \quad U_{\pm} : \Sigma \mapsto \Sigma, \quad u_{\pm} = U_{\pm}(u_0) = u_0 - i \int_0^{\pm\infty} S(-t')(|u|^{p-1}u)(t')dt',$$

where  $u(t)$  is the solution of (NLS) with initial data  $u_0 \in \Sigma$ . Inversely we have the wave operators  $\Omega_{\pm} : u_{\pm} \rightarrow u_0$  as follows

**Theorem 3.3.** *Assume (3.9), then for any  $u_+ \in \Sigma$  (resp.  $u_- \in \Sigma$ ), there exists a unique  $u_0 \in \Sigma$  such that the Cauchy problem (NLS) with the initial data  $u_0$  has a unique solution  $u \in C(\mathbb{R}; \Sigma)$  with  $\|S(-t)u(t) - u_+\|_\Sigma \rightarrow 0$  (resp.  $\|S(-t)u(t) - u_-\|_\Sigma \rightarrow 0$ ) as  $t \rightarrow \infty$  (resp.  $t \rightarrow -\infty$ ).*

Hence we can define the scattering operator  $\mathbb{S} : \Sigma \mapsto \Sigma$ ,  $\mathbb{S}u_- = U_+ \Omega_- u_-$ .

[15.12.2017]  
[22.12.2017]

*Proof.* Let  $u_+ \in \Sigma$  and we follow the proof of Theorems 2.8 and 2.10, to search for the fixed point of the nonlinear map <sup>1</sup>

$$\Psi_+ : u \mapsto S(t)u_+ + i \int_t^\infty S(t-t')(|u|^{p-1}u)(t')dt',$$

in the following complete metric space with  $(q, \rho)$  admissible exponent pair:

$$\tilde{X}_T = \{u \in C([T, \infty); H^1(\mathbb{R}^d)) \mid Pu \in C([T, \infty); L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)),$$

$$\|u\|_{\tilde{X}_T} := \|u\|_{L^q([T, \infty); W^{1, \rho}(\mathbb{R}^d))} + \|Pu\|_{L^q([T, \infty); L^\rho(\mathbb{R}^d))} + \sup_{t \geq T} |t|^{\frac{2}{q}} \|u(t)\|_{L^\rho(\mathbb{R}^d)} \leq R\},$$

for some appropriately chosen  $R, T$ . Indeed, if  $u_+ \in \Sigma$ , then by Strichartz estimates and  $P(t)S(t) = S(t)x$ , the solution  $w_+ = S(t)u_+ \in C(\mathbb{R}; \Sigma)$  satisfies

$$\|w_+\|_{L^q(\mathbb{R}; W^{1, \rho}(\mathbb{R}^d))} + \|Pw_+\|_{L^q(\mathbb{R}; L^\rho(\mathbb{R}^d))} \leq C\|u_+\|_\Sigma.$$

Since  $Pw_+ = 2ite^{i|x|^2/4t} \nabla(e^{-i|x|^2/4t} w_+)$ , we derive

$$\|\nabla(e^{-i|x|^2/4t} w_+)\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)} \leq (2|t|)^{-1} \|Pw_+\|_{L^2_x} = (2|t|)^{-1} \|xu_+\|_{L^2_x},$$

which, together with  $\|e^{-i|x|^2/4t} w_+\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)} = \|w_+\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)} = \|u_+\|_{L^2_x}$  and Gagliardo-Nirenberg's inequality, implies

$$\|w_+(t)\|_{L^p_x} = \|e^{-i|x|^2/4t} w_+\|_{L^p_x} \leq C|t|^{-\left(\frac{d}{2} - \frac{d}{p}\right)} (\|u_+\|_{L^2_x} + \|xu_+\|_{L^2_x}) \leq C|t|^{-\frac{2}{q}} \|u_+\|_\Sigma.$$

Hence  $S(t)u_+ \in \tilde{X}_T$  if  $R \geq C\|u_+\|_\Sigma$  for some constant  $C$ . Now we turn to consider the nonlinear term in the map  $\Psi_+$ : Notice that by Strichartz estimate,

$$\begin{aligned} \left\| \int_t^\infty S(t-t')(|u|^{p-1}u)(t')dt' \right\|_{L^q([T, \infty); W^{1, \rho})} &\leq C\| |u|^{p-1}u \|_{L^{q'}([T, \infty); W^{1, \rho'})} \\ &\leq C\|t^{-\frac{2}{q}(p-1)}\|_{L^{(\frac{1}{q'} - \frac{1}{q})^{-1}}([T, \infty))} \left( \sup_{t \geq T} |t|^{\frac{2}{q}} \|u\|_{L^p_x} \right)^{p-1} \|u\|_{L^q([T, \infty); W^{1, \rho})}, \end{aligned}$$

<sup>1</sup>The formulation of the nonlinear map  $\Psi_+$  is motivated by taking the difference between the Duhamel's formula for  $u(t) = S(t)u_0 - i \int_0^t S(t-t')(|u|^{p-1}u)(t')dt'$  and  $S(t)u_+ = S(t)u_0 - i \int_0^\infty S(t-t')(|u|^{p-1}u)(t')dt'$ .

with  $\|t^{-\frac{2}{q}(p-1)}\|_{L^{(\frac{1}{q}-\frac{1}{q})^{-1}}([T,\infty))} = CT^{1-\frac{2p}{q}} \rightarrow 0$  as  $T \rightarrow 0$  if  $p \geq 1 + \frac{4}{d}$ , and similarly

$$\begin{aligned} & \left\| \int_t^\infty P(t)S(t-t')(|u|^{p-1}u)(t')dt' \right\|_{L^q([T,\infty);L^\rho)} \leq C\| |u|^{p-1}|Pu \|_{L^{q'}([T,\infty);L^{\rho'})} \\ & \leq CT^{1-\frac{2p}{q}} \left( \sup_{t \geq T} |t|^{\frac{2}{q}} \|u\|_{L_x^\rho} \right)^{p-1} \|Pu\|_{L^q([T,\infty);L^\rho)}, \end{aligned}$$

and for  $t \geq T$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} & \left\| \int_t^\infty S(t-t')(|u|^{p-1}u)(t')dt' \right\|_{L_x^\rho} \leq C \int_t^\infty |t-t'|^{-\left(\frac{d}{2}-\frac{d}{\rho}\right)} \left\| (|u|^{p-1}u)(t') \right\|_{L_x^{\rho'}} dt' \\ & \leq Ct^{-\frac{2}{p}} T^{1-\frac{2p}{q}} \left( \sup_{t \geq T} |t|^{\frac{2}{q}} \|u\|_{L_x^\rho} \right)^p. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore we can choose  $R = C\|u_+\|_\Sigma$  and  $T = C\|u_+\|_\Sigma^{\frac{p-1}{\frac{2p}{q}-1}}$  with  $C$  large enough such that  $\Psi_+$  is a contraction mapping in  $\tilde{X}_T$  and hence there exists a unique fixed point  $u$  of  $\Psi_+$  in  $\tilde{X}_T$ . Hence  $u \in C([T, \infty); \Sigma)$ ,  $u(T) \in \Sigma$  and by the formulation of  $\Psi_+$ , we have <sup>2</sup>

$$u(t+T) = S(t)u(T) - i \int_0^t S(t-t')(|u|^{p-1}u)(T+t')dt',$$

that is,  $u_T(t, x) := u(T+t, x)$  is the solution of defocusing nonlinear Schrödinger equation (NLS) with the initial data  $u(T) \in \Sigma$  which hence exists globally in time  $u_T \in C(\mathbb{R}; \Sigma) \cap L^q(\mathbb{R}; W^{1,\rho})$  by Theorem 3.2. In particular,  $u_0 = u_T(-T) \in \Sigma$  is well-defined and  $u(t, x) \in C(\mathbb{R}; \Sigma) \cap L^q(\mathbb{R}; W^{1,\rho})$  is the unique solution of (NLS) with the initial data  $u_0$  such that, by use of  $u \in \tilde{X}_T$ ,  $u = \Psi_+(u)$  and Strichartz estimate,

$$\begin{aligned} \|S(-t)u(t) - u_+\|_\Sigma &= \left\| i \int_t^\infty S(-t')(|u|^{p-1}u)(t')dt' \right\|_\Sigma \\ &\leq Ct^{-(\frac{2p}{q}-1)} \|u\|_{\tilde{X}_T}^p \rightarrow 0 \text{ as } t \rightarrow \infty. \end{aligned}$$

The solution  $u \in C(\mathbb{R}; \Sigma) \cap L^q(\mathbb{R}; W^{1,\rho}(\mathbb{R}^d))$  such that  $\|S(-t)u(t) - u_+\|_\Sigma \rightarrow 0$  as  $t \rightarrow \infty$  is unique: Indeed, if there are two solutions  $u_1, u_2$  of (NLS) such that  $\|S(-t)u_j(t) - u_+\|_\Sigma \rightarrow 0$  as  $t \rightarrow \infty$ , then  $u_+ = u_j(0) - i \int_0^\infty S(-t')(|u_j|^{p-1}u_j)(t')dt'$  which together with the Duhamel's formula for  $u_j$  implies that  $(u_j)$ s are the unique fixed point of the nonlinear map  $\Psi_+$ .

Similarly we can define the wave operator  $\Omega_- : u_- \rightarrow u_0, \Sigma \mapsto \Sigma$ .  $\square$

<sup>2</sup>We write  $u(t+T) = S(t+T)u_+ + i \int_t^\infty S(t+T-t')(|u|^{p-1}u)(t')dt'$  and  $u(T) = S(T)u_+ + i \int_T^\infty S(T-t')(|u|^{p-1}u)(t')dt'$  and take the difference between  $u(t+T)$  and  $S(t)u(T)$ .

## 4 Solitary waves

### 4.1 A minimiser problem

#### 4.1.1 Space $H_r^1(\mathbb{R}^d)$

Let  $d \geq 2$ . Let  $H_r^1(\mathbb{R}^d)$  be the set of the radial functions in  $H^1(\mathbb{R}^d)$ :

$$H_r^1(\mathbb{R}^d) = \{f \in H^1(\mathbb{R}^d) \mid \exists \tilde{f} : [0, \infty) \rightarrow \mathbb{C} \text{ s.t. } f(x) = \tilde{f}(r), r = (\sum_{j=1}^d |x_j|^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}\}.$$

It can also be viewed as the complement of the set of the radial functions in  $C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^d)$  with respect to the  $H^1$ -norm:

$$\|f\|_{H^1(\mathbb{R}^d)}^2 = \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |\nabla f|^2 + |f|^2 dx = \omega_d \int_0^\infty (|\partial_r \tilde{f}(r)|^2 + |\tilde{f}(r)|^2) r^{d-1} dr,$$

where  $\omega_d$  is the volume of the unit ball in  $\mathbb{R}^d$ .

**Lemma 4.1** (Regularity and vanishing property of  $H_r^1$ -functions). *Let  $d \geq 2$  and  $u \in H_r^1(\mathbb{R}^d)$ . Then  $\tilde{u} \in C^{\frac{1}{2}}((0, \infty))$  and*

$$\|r^{\frac{d-1}{2}} u\|_{L^\infty(\mathbb{R}^d)} \leq C \|u\|_{H^1(\mathbb{R}^d)}. \quad (4.10)$$

*Proof.* Let  $\varphi(x) = \tilde{\varphi}(r) \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^d)$ . Then

$$\tilde{\varphi}^2(r) = -2 \int_r^\infty \tilde{\varphi}'(\rho) \tilde{\varphi}(\rho) d\rho,$$

and hence

$$\begin{aligned} |\tilde{\varphi}^2(r)| &\leq \frac{2}{r^{d-1}} \int_r^\infty |\tilde{\varphi}'(\rho) \tilde{\varphi}(\rho)| \rho^{d-1} d\rho \\ &\leq \frac{2}{r^{d-1}} \left( \int_r^\infty |\tilde{\varphi}'|^2 \rho^{d-1} d\rho \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \left( \int_r^\infty |\tilde{\varphi}|^2 \rho^{d-1} d\rho \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \leq \frac{C}{r^{d-1}} \|\nabla \varphi\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)}^{\frac{1}{2}} \|\varphi\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)}^{\frac{1}{2}}. \end{aligned}$$

This implies (4.10) by density argument.

Similarly, let  $0 < r_1 < r_2 < \infty$  and we calculate by Hölder's inequality

$$\begin{aligned} |\tilde{\varphi}(r_1) - \tilde{\varphi}(r_2)| &\leq \left| \int_{r_1}^{r_2} \tilde{\varphi}' d\rho \right| \leq \frac{1}{r_1^{\frac{d-1}{2}}} \int_{r_1}^{r_2} |\tilde{\varphi}'| \rho^{\frac{d-1}{2}} d\rho \\ &\leq \frac{C}{r_1^{\frac{d-1}{2}}} \|\nabla \varphi\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)} |r_2 - r_1|^{\frac{1}{2}}, \end{aligned}$$

which implies that for any compact set  $K \subset\subset (0, \infty)$ ,  $\|\tilde{\varphi}\|_{C^{\frac{1}{2}}(\overline{K})} = \|\tilde{\varphi}\|_{L^\infty(K)} + \sup_{r_1 \neq r_2, r_1, r_2 \in K} \frac{|\tilde{\varphi}(r_2) - \tilde{\varphi}(r_1)|}{|r_2 - r_1|^{\frac{1}{2}}} \leq C(K) \|\varphi\|_{H^1}$  and hence by density argument  $\|\tilde{u}\|_{C^{\frac{1}{2}}(\overline{K})} \leq C(K) \|u\|_{H^1}$  which implies  $\tilde{u} \in C^{\frac{1}{2}}((0, \infty))$ .  $\square$

**Proposition 4.1** (Compact Sobolev embedding). *Let  $d \geq 2$  and  $2^*$  as defined in Corollary 2.1. Then the Sobolev embedding  $H_r^1(\mathbb{R}^d) \hookrightarrow L^p(\mathbb{R}^d)$ ,  $p \in (2, 2^*)$  is compact.*

*Proof.* Let  $u \in H_r^1(\mathbb{R}^d)$  and  $2 < p < 2^*$ . Then (4.10) implies

$$\int_{|x| \geq R} |u|^p dx \leq \frac{\|r^{\frac{d-1}{2}} u\|_{L^\infty}^{p-2}}{R^{\frac{(p-2)(d-1)}{2}}} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |u|^2 dx \leq CR^{-\frac{(p-2)(d-1)}{2}} \|u\|_{H^1(\mathbb{R}^d)}^p \\ \rightarrow 0 \text{ as } R \rightarrow \infty \text{ uniformly for the } H_r^1 \text{ functions with } \|u\|_{H^1} \leq 1.$$

This, combined with the compact embedding  $H^1(\mathbb{R}^d) \hookrightarrow L^p(\bar{B}_R)$  for any  $R \in (0, \infty)$  in Theorem 2.6, implies the compact embedding  $H_r^1(\mathbb{R}^d) \hookrightarrow L^p(\mathbb{R}^d)$ .  $\square$

**Remark 4.1.** *The endpoint case  $H_r^1(\mathbb{R}^d) \hookrightarrow L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)$  is NOT correct by view of the canonical counter example:  $u_n(x) = n^{-\frac{d}{2}} u(n^{-1}x)$  with the radial function  $u \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^d)$ , then  $u_n \rightarrow 0$  in  $H^1(\mathbb{R}^d)$  as  $n \rightarrow \infty$  while  $\|u_n\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)} = \|u\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)} \neq 0$ .*

#### 4.1.2 Compact minimisation

**Proposition 4.2** (Compact minimisation). *Let  $d \geq 2$  and  $p$  be a energy-subcritical exponent:  $1 < p < 2^* - 1 = \begin{cases} 1 + \frac{4}{d-2} & \text{if } d \geq 3 \\ \infty & \text{if } d = 2 \end{cases}$ .*

*Then for any  $M > 0$ , the minimisation problem*

$$I_M = \inf_{u \in \mathcal{A}_M} \{\|u\|_{H^1(\mathbb{R}^d)}^2\}, \\ \text{where } \mathcal{A}_M = \left\{ u \in H_r^1(\mathbb{R}^d) \mid \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |u|^{p+1} dx = M \right\}, \quad (4.11)$$

*has a solution  $u \in \mathcal{A}_M$ .*

[22.12.2017]

[12.01.2018]

*Proof.* Since by Sobolev's embedding  $H^1(\mathbb{R}^d) \hookrightarrow L^{p+1}(\mathbb{R}^d)$ ,  $2 < p+1 < 2^*$ :  $\|u\|_{H^1(\mathbb{R}^d)} \geq C^{-1} \|u\|_{L^{p+1}(\mathbb{R}^d)} = C^{-1} M^{1/(p+1)}$  if  $u \in \mathcal{A}_M$ , we can take a minimising sequence  $(u_n)_n$  in  $\mathcal{A}_M$  such that

$$\|u_n\|_{H^1(\mathbb{R}^d)}^2 \rightarrow I_M \geq C^{-2} M^{\frac{2}{p+1}} > 0.$$

Since  $(u_n)_n$  are bounded in  $H_r^1(\mathbb{R}^d)$ , by Proposition 4.1 there exists a subsequence (still denoted by  $(u_n)_n$ ) and  $u \in H_r^1(\mathbb{R}^d)$  such that

$$u_n \rightarrow u \text{ in } L^{p+1}(\mathbb{R}^d), \quad u_n \rightharpoonup u \text{ in } H^1(\mathbb{R}^d).$$

Therefore

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |u|^{p+1} dx &= \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |u_n|^{p+1} dx = M \text{ and thus } u \in \mathcal{A}_M, \\ \|u\|_{H^1(\mathbb{R}^d)}^2 &\leq \liminf_{n \rightarrow \infty} \|u_n\|_{H^1(\mathbb{R}^d)}^2 = I_M, \end{aligned}$$

and hence  $u \in \mathcal{A}_M$  is the minimiser of (4.11).  $\square$

**Lemma 4.2** (Positivity). *If  $u \in \mathcal{A}_M$ , then  $|u| \in \mathcal{A}_M$ ,  $\||u|\|_{H^1(\mathbb{R}^d)} \leq \|u\|_{H^1(\mathbb{R}^d)}$ . If  $u \in \mathcal{A}_M$  is a minimiser of (4.11), then so is  $|u|$  such that  $\||u|\|_{H^1(\mathbb{R}^d)} = \|u\|_{H^1(\mathbb{R}^d)}$ , and if furthermore  $|u| > 0$ , then  $u = |u|e^{i\gamma}$  for some  $\gamma \in \mathbb{R}$ .*

*Proof.* The lemma follows from the following claim that if  $u \in H^1(\mathbb{R}^d)$ , then

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |\nabla u|^2 dx \geq \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |\nabla |u||^2 dx$$

and if  $|u| > 0$ , then the above equality holds if and only if  $u = |u|e^{i\gamma}$  for some  $\gamma \in \mathbb{R}$ .

Indeed, suppose  $u = f + ig$ ,  $f, g \in H^1(\mathbb{R}^d; \mathbb{R})$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |\nabla |u||^2 dx &= \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} \left| \frac{f\nabla f + g\nabla g}{\sqrt{f^2 + g^2}} \right|^2 dx \\ &= \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} \frac{f^2 |\nabla f|^2 + 2fg \nabla f \cdot \nabla g + g^2 |\nabla g|^2}{f^2 + g^2} dx \\ &= \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |\nabla f|^2 + |\nabla g|^2 dx - \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} \frac{|f\nabla g - g\nabla f|^2}{f^2 + g^2} dx. \end{aligned}$$

Hence the above inequality holds and the equality holds if and only if  $f\nabla g = g\nabla f$  almost every where. If  $g \neq 0$ , then for any  $\phi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^d)$  we derive

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}^d} \frac{f}{g} \nabla \phi dx = \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} \frac{-g\phi \nabla f + f\phi \nabla g}{g^2} dx = \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} (f\nabla g - g\nabla f) \frac{\phi}{g^2} dx,$$

and hence the equality holds if and only if  $f/g$  is a constant, i.e.  $u = |u|e^{i\gamma}$  for some  $\gamma \in \mathbb{R}$ . If  $|u| > 0$  such that  $\mathbb{R}^d = f^{-1}(\mathbb{C} \setminus \{0\}) \cup g^{-1}(\mathbb{C} \setminus \{0\})$ ,  $f, g$  continuous, then we can assume  $g \neq 0$  without loss of generality.  $\square$

### 4.1.3 Euler-Lagrangian equation

**Proposition 4.3.** *Let  $u \geq 0$  be the minimiser of (4.11). Then there exists  $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}$  such that*

$$-\Delta u + u = \lambda u^p. \quad (4.12)$$

The  $\lambda$  in (4.12) is indeed a positive constant independent on  $u$ :  $\lambda = I_M/M$ .

*Proof. Step 1 Differentiation*

Let  $t \in \mathbb{R}$  and  $h \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^d; \mathbb{R})$  a radial, real-valued function. Then by view of  $||1 + z|^{p+1} - 1 - (p+1)z| \leq C(|z|^2 + |z|^{p+1})$  for some constant  $C$  independent of  $z \in \mathbb{R}$ , we derive for  $u \geq 0$  that

$$\left| \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} (|u + th|^{p+1} - u^{p+1} - (p+1)thu^p) dx \right| \leq C \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} t^2 h^2 u^{p-1} + t^{p+1} |h|^{p+1} dx.$$

Hence

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |u + th|^{p+1} dx = \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} u^{p+1} dx + (p+1)t \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} hu^p dx + o(t) \text{ as } t \rightarrow 0.$$

Let  $h$  be chosen such that  $\int_{\mathbb{R}^d} hu^p dx = 0$ , then since  $u \in \mathcal{A}_M$ , we have

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |u + th|^{p+1} dx = M + o(t).$$

Let  $v_t = \frac{M^{\frac{1}{p+1}}}{\|u+th\|_{L^{p+1}}} (u + th)$ , then  $\|v_t\|_{L^{p+1}} = M^{\frac{1}{p+1}}$ ,  $v_t = (u + th)(1 + o(t))$  and

$$\begin{aligned} \|v_t\|_{H^1}^2 &= (1 + o(t)) \left( \|u\|_{H^1}^2 + 2t \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} (uh + \nabla u \cdot \nabla h) dx + t^2 \|h\|_{H^1}^2 \right) \\ &= \|u\|_{H^1}^2 + 2t \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} (uh + \nabla u \cdot \nabla h) dx + o(t) \text{ as } t \rightarrow 0. \end{aligned}$$

Since  $u \geq 0$  is the minimiser,  $\|v_t\|_{H^1} \geq \|u\|_{H^1}$  for any  $t \in \mathbb{R}$  and hence

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}^d} (uh + \nabla u \cdot \nabla h) dx = 0 \text{ for } h \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^d) \text{ whenever } \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} hu^p dx = 0.$$

**Step 2 Lagrangian multiplier**

Let  $L_1, L_2$  be the two linear forms on the Hilbert space  $H_r^1$  defined by

$$L_1(h) = \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} hu^p dx, \quad L_2(h) = \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} (uh + \nabla u \cdot \nabla h) dx.$$

Then  $\text{Ker } L_1 \subset \text{Ker } L_2$ . Let  $h \in H_r^1$  with  $L_1(h) \neq 0$ . Then any  $a \in H_r^1$  can be written as

$$a = \frac{L_1(a)}{L_1(h)}h + b \text{ with } b = a - \frac{L_1(a)}{L_1(h)}h \in \text{Ker } L_1 \subset \text{Ker } L_2.$$

Hence  $L_2(a) = \frac{L_1(a)}{L_1(h)}L_2(h) = (\frac{L_2(h)}{L_1(h)})L_1(a)$  for any  $a \in H_r^1$ . This implies (4.12).

### Step 3 Lagrange multiplier

We test (4.12) by  $\bar{u} = u \geq 0$  to arrive at

$$I_M = \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |\nabla u|^2 + |u|^2 dx = \lambda \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} u^{p+1} dx = \lambda M,$$

which implies  $\lambda = I_M/M > 0$ . □

#### 4.1.4 Regularity and decay property

We take  $v = \lambda^{\frac{1}{p-1}}u$  in (4.12) such that  $v$  satisfies the following with  $1 < p < 2^* - 1$

$$\Delta v - v + v^p = 0, \quad v \geq 0, \quad v \in H_r^1. \quad (4.13)$$

**Proposition 4.4** (Regularity and decay). *Let  $v(x) = \tilde{v}(r) \neq 0$  solves (4.13), then  $v \in W^{3,q}(\mathbb{R}^d)$ ,  $\forall q \in [2, \infty)$  such that*

$$\begin{aligned} v &\in C^2(\mathbb{R}^d), \quad |D^\beta v(x)| \rightarrow 0 \text{ as } |x| \rightarrow \infty, \quad \forall |\beta| \leq 2, \\ \exists \varepsilon > 0 \text{ s.t. } e^{\varepsilon|x|}(|v| + |\nabla v|) &\in L^\infty(\mathbb{R}^d), \end{aligned}$$

and  $\tilde{v}$  solves the ODE

$$\tilde{v}'' + \frac{d-1}{r}\tilde{v}' = \tilde{v} - \tilde{v}^p, \quad \tilde{v}(0) = a, \quad \tilde{v}'(0) = 0, \quad (4.14)$$

for some  $a > 0$ .

#### Proof. Step 1 Regularity by iteration

We will use freely the following fact which we admit here without proof: If  $v \in L^q(\mathbb{R}^d)$ ,  $p < q < \infty$ , then  $v^p \in L^{\frac{q}{p}}(\mathbb{R}^d)$  and hence by the equation (4.13)

$$\hat{v} = \frac{\hat{v}^p}{1 + |\xi|^2} \text{ such that } v \in W^{2, \frac{q}{p}}(\mathbb{R}^d).$$

By view of  $v \in H_r^1(\mathbb{R}^d) \hookrightarrow L^{q_0}(\mathbb{R}^d)$ ,  $q_0 = p+1$  and the Sobolev embedding

$$W^{2, \frac{q_j}{p}}(\mathbb{R}^d) \hookrightarrow \begin{cases} L^{q_{j+1}}(\mathbb{R}^d) & \text{if } 2 - \frac{dp}{q_j} = -\frac{d}{q_{j+1}} < 0 \\ L^q(\mathbb{R}^d), \forall q \in [\frac{q_j}{p}, \infty) & \text{if } 2 - \frac{dp}{q_j} = 0 \\ L^\infty(\mathbb{R}^d) & \text{if } 2 - \frac{dp}{q_j} > 0. \end{cases}$$

we have  $v \in L^\infty(\mathbb{R}^d)$ . Indeed,



- if  $2 - \frac{dp}{q_0} > 0$ , then by Sobolev embedding  $v \in W^{2, \frac{q_0}{p}}(\mathbb{R}^d) \hookrightarrow L^\infty(\mathbb{R}^d)$ .
- if  $2 - \frac{dp}{q_0} < 0$ , then by Sobolev embedding  $v \in W^{2, \frac{q_0}{p}}(\mathbb{R}^d) \hookrightarrow L^{q_1}(\mathbb{R}^d)$  and hence  $v \in W^{2, \frac{q_1}{p}}(\mathbb{R}^d)$ . If  $2 - \frac{dp}{q_1} > 0$ , then we are done. If not, we can continue the procedure such that there exists  $k$  with  $2 - \frac{dp}{q_k} \geq 0$  and  $2 - \frac{dp}{q_{k-1}} < 0$ : This is possible since

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{q_{j+1}} &= -\frac{2}{d} + \frac{p}{q_j} \text{ i.e. } \frac{1}{q_j} = p^j \left( \frac{1}{q_0} - \frac{2}{d(p-1)} \right) + \frac{2}{d(p-1)} \\ \Rightarrow \frac{1}{q_{j+1}} - \frac{1}{q_j} &= p^j \left( \frac{p-1}{q_0} - \frac{2}{d} \right), \text{ with } \frac{p-1}{p+1} - \frac{2}{d} < 0 \text{ if } p < 2^* - 1. \end{aligned}$$

- if  $2 - \frac{dp}{q_k} = 0$  for some  $k \in \mathbb{N}$ , then  $v \in L^q(\mathbb{R}^d)$  for any  $q \in [2, \infty)$  and we choose  $q \gg 1$  such that  $2 - \frac{dp}{q} > 0$ .

Therefore  $v^p \in L^{\frac{p+1}{p}}(\mathbb{R}^d) \cap L^\infty(\mathbb{R}^d)$  and hence  $v \in W^{2,q}(\mathbb{R}^d)$  for all  $q \in [2, \infty)$  and thus  $v^p \in W^{1,q}(\mathbb{R}^d)$  for all  $q \in [2, \infty)$  which implies correspondingly  $\nabla v \in W^{2,q}(\mathbb{R}^d)$  for all  $q \in [2, \infty)$ . Thus  $v \in W^{3,q}(\mathbb{R}^d)$  for all  $q \in [2, \infty)$ , which implies

- $v \in C^{2,\alpha}(\mathbb{R}^d)$  for any  $\alpha \in (0, 1)$ , by Sobolev embedding;
- $\forall |\beta| \leq 2$ ,  $D^\beta v \in H_r^1(\mathbb{R}^d)$  and hence  $|D^\beta v(x)| \rightarrow 0$  as  $|x| \rightarrow \infty$ .

Hence the equation (4.13) for  $v(x)$  implies the equation (4.14) for  $\tilde{v}(r)$  in the classical sense, and furthermore,  $\tilde{v}' = \frac{r}{d-1}(\tilde{v} - \tilde{v}^p - \tilde{v}'')$  is uniformly bounded such that  $\tilde{v}'(r) \rightarrow 0$  as  $r \rightarrow 0$  and thus  $\tilde{v}(0) = a > 0$  since if  $a = 0$  then  $\tilde{v} = 0$ .

### Step 2 Decay property

Let  $\theta_\varepsilon = e^{\frac{|x|}{1+\varepsilon|x|}}$ ,  $\varepsilon > 0$  be a bounded, Lipschitz continuous function with  $|\nabla \theta_\varepsilon|^2 \leq \theta_\varepsilon^2$ , a.e. We test the equation (4.13) by  $\theta_\varepsilon v$  to get

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}^d} -\theta_\varepsilon (|\nabla v|^2 + |v|^2) dx - \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} \nabla v \cdot \nabla \theta_\varepsilon v dx + \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} \theta_\varepsilon v^{p+1} dx = 0.$$

Since

$$\begin{aligned} \left| \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} \nabla v \cdot \nabla \theta_\varepsilon v dx \right| &\leq \frac{1}{4} \|\sqrt{|\nabla \theta_\varepsilon|} v\|_{L^2}^2 + \|\sqrt{|\nabla \theta_\varepsilon|} \nabla v\|_{L^2}^2 \\ &\leq \frac{1}{4} \|\sqrt{\theta_\varepsilon} v\|_{L^2}^2 + \|\sqrt{\theta_\varepsilon} \nabla v\|_{L^2}^2, \end{aligned}$$

we derive

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}^d} \theta_\varepsilon v^2 \, dx \leq 2 \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} \theta_\varepsilon v^{p+1} \, dx.$$

Since  $v \rightarrow 0$  as  $|x| \rightarrow \infty$ , we take  $R > 0$  such that  $|v|^{p-1} \leq 1/4$  when  $|x| \geq R$  and hence

$$2 \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} \theta_\varepsilon v^{p+1} \leq 2 \int_{|x| \leq R} e^{|x|} v^{p+1} \, dx + \frac{1}{2} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} \theta_\varepsilon v^2 \, dx.$$

Thus

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}^d} \theta_\varepsilon v^2 \, dx \leq 4 \int_{|x| \leq R} e^{|x|} v^{p+1} \, dx < \infty,$$

which implies  $\int_{\mathbb{R}^d} e^{|x|} v^2 \, dx < \infty$  as  $\varepsilon \rightarrow 0$ . Since  $v$  is globally Lipschitz continuous,  $e^{|x|} v^{d+2}$  is uniformly bounded. Similarly we apply  $\partial_{x_j}$  to the equation (4.13) and test it by  $\theta_\varepsilon \partial_{x_j} v$  to arrive at  $\int_{\mathbb{R}^d} e^{|x|} |\nabla v|^2 \, dx < \infty$ .  $\square$

**Remark 4.2.** *It is easy to show the regularity away from the origin by Lemma 4.1. Indeed, let  $w = \chi v$ , where  $\chi \in C_0^\infty$  is a radial function with the compact support away from zero and  $v$  satisfies (4.13). Then  $w$  satisfies*

$$\Delta w - w = f, \quad f = -\chi v^p + 2\nabla \chi \cdot \nabla v + v \Delta \chi.$$

Since  $v \in L^\infty$  on  $\text{Supp } \chi$  by virtue of (4.10),  $f \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)$  and hence  $\hat{w}(\xi) = -\frac{f}{1+|\xi|^2}$ , that is,  $w \in H_r^2(\mathbb{R}^d)$ . Thus  $\partial_r \tilde{w} \in C^{\frac{1}{2}}((0, \infty))$  by Lemma 4.1 and  $w(x) = \tilde{w}(r) \in C^1(\mathbb{R}^d \setminus \{0\})$ ,  $v(x) \in C^1(\mathbb{R}^d \setminus \{0\})$ . Now consider the equation for  $\partial_r \tilde{w}$ :

$$(\Delta - 1)\partial_r \tilde{w} = \partial_r f \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^d),$$

and the same argument as before implies  $v(x) \in C^2(\mathbb{R}^d \setminus \{0\})$ .

#### 4.1.5 Classification of minimisers

We have the following uniqueness result for the nonnegative solution which decays at infinity of the equation (4.14) proved by [Kwong 1987]:

**Proposition 4.5** (Uniqueness). *There exists a unique  $a > 0$  such that the solution  $\tilde{v}$  of the ODE (4.14) satisfying*

$$\tilde{v}(r) \geq 0, \quad \forall r \geq 0 \text{ and } \tilde{v}(r) \rightarrow 0 \text{ as } r \rightarrow \infty.$$

Furthermore,  $\tilde{v}(r) > 0$  for all  $r \geq 0$  and we denote the solution to be  $Q(r)$ : the fundamental solution of (4.14).

We do not give a proof here and interested readers can refer to Appendix B of Tao's book.

Let  $u \in \mathcal{A}_M$  be a minimiser of (4.11), then  $|u| \in \mathcal{A}_M$  is also a minimiser by Lemma 4.2. Thus by Propositions 4.3 and 4.4, the nonnegative function  $v = \lambda^{\frac{1}{p-1}}|u| \in H_r^1$  satisfies (4.13) and the nonnegative function  $\tilde{v}(r) = v(x)$  satisfies (4.14) and  $\tilde{v}(r) \rightarrow 0$  as  $r \rightarrow \infty$ . Hence by Proposition 4.5,  $v(x) = \tilde{v}(r) = Q(r) > 0$  and thus  $|u| > 0$ . Since  $u, |u| > 0$  are two minimisers such that  $\|\nabla|u|\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)} = \|\nabla u\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)}$ , there exists  $\gamma \in \mathbb{R}$  such that

$$u = |u|e^{i\gamma} = \lambda^{-\frac{1}{p-1}}ve^{i\gamma} = \left(\frac{I_M}{M}\right)^{-\frac{1}{p-1}}Q(r)e^{i\gamma}.$$

Therefore we have obtained

**Theorem 4.1** (Classification of minimisers). *Let  $M > 0$ ,  $d \geq 2$ ,  $1 < p < 2^* - 1$ , then the minimisation problem (4.11)*

$$I_M = \inf_{u \in \mathcal{A}_M} \{\|u\|_{H^1}^2\}, \quad \mathcal{A}_M = \{u \in H_r^1(\mathbb{R}^d) \mid \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |u|^{p+1} dx = M\}$$

has a family of minimisers

$$e^{i\gamma} \left(\frac{M}{I_M}\right)^{\frac{1}{p-1}}Q(r), \quad \gamma \in \mathbb{R},$$

where  $Q > 0$  is the unique fundamental state of the equation (4.13).

---

[12.01.2018]  
[19.01.2018]

## 4.2 Concentration compactness

**Lemma 4.3** (Concentration-Compactness). *Let  $(u_n)_{n \geq 1}$  be a bounded sequence in  $H^1(\mathbb{R}^d)$  with  $\|u_n\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)}^2 = M > 0$ . Then there exists a subsequence  $(u_{n_k})$  such that one the following properties holds:*

(i) *Compactness: There exists a sequence  $(y_k)$  in  $\mathbb{R}^d$  such that*

$$\forall q \in [2, 2^*), \quad u_{n_k}(\cdot - y_k) \rightarrow u \text{ in } L^q(\mathbb{R}^d) \text{ as } k \rightarrow \infty;$$

(ii) *Evanescence:  $\forall q \in (2, 2^*), u_{n_k} \rightarrow 0$  in  $L^q(\mathbb{R}^d)$  as  $k \rightarrow \infty$ ;*

(iii) *Dichotomy: There exist two bounded sequences  $(v_k)$ ,  $(w_k)$  with compact support in  $H^1(\mathbb{R}^d)$  and  $\alpha \in (0, 1)$ , such that*

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Supp } v_k \cap \text{Supp } w_k &= \{\}, \quad d(\text{Supp } v_k, \text{Supp } w_k) \rightarrow \infty \text{ as } k \rightarrow \infty, \\ \|v_k\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)}^2 &\rightarrow \alpha M, \quad \|w_k\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)}^2 \rightarrow (1 - \alpha)M, \text{ as } k \rightarrow \infty, \\ \forall q \in [2, 2^*), \quad &\|u_{n_k}\|_{L^q}^q - \|v_k\|_{L^q}^q - \|w_k\|_{L^q}^q \rightarrow 0, \text{ as } k \rightarrow \infty, \\ \liminf_{k \rightarrow \infty} &(\|\nabla u_{n_k}\|_{L^2}^2 - \|\nabla v_k\|_{L^2}^2 - \|\nabla w_k\|_{L^2}^2) \geq 0. \end{aligned}$$

*Proof. Step 1 Concentration functions*

Let  $\rho_n : [0, \infty) \mapsto [0, M]$  be the concentration function of  $u_n$ :

$$\rho_n(R) = \sup_{y \in \mathbb{R}^d} \int_{B(y, R)} |u_n(x)|^2 dx,$$

with the following properties:

- Monotonicity:  $\forall n$ ,  $\rho_n(R)$  increases to  $M$  as  $R$  increases to  $\infty$ ;
- Concentration point:  $\forall R$ , the map  $y \mapsto \int_{B(y, R)} |u|^2$  is continuous and tends to zero as  $|y| \rightarrow \infty$ , and hence the concentration point exists:

$$\forall R > 0, \quad \forall n \geq 0, \quad \exists y_n = y_n(R) \in \mathbb{R}^d \text{ s.t. } \rho_n(R) = \int_{B(y_n, R)} |u_n|^2 dx;$$

- Uniform Hölder continuity: There exist  $C, \beta > 0$  (independent on  $n$ ) such that

$$\forall R_1, R_2 > 0, \quad \forall n \geq 0, \quad |\rho_n(R_1) - \rho_n(R_2)| \leq C |R_2^d - R_1^d|^\beta.$$

Indeed, suppose without loss of generality  $R_1 \leq R_2$ , then

$$\begin{aligned} |\rho_n(R_1) - \rho_n(R_2)| &= \int_{B(y_n^2, R_2)} |u_n|^2 dx - \int_{B(y_n^1, R_1)} |u_n|^2 dx \\ &= \left( \int_{B(y_n^2, R_2)} - \int_{B(y_n^2, R_1)} \right) |u_n|^2 dx + \left( \int_{B(y_n^2, R_1)} - \int_{B(y_n^1, R_1)} \right) |u_n|^2 dx \\ &\leq \int_{R_1 \leq |x - y_n^2| \leq R_2} |u_n|^2 dx \leq C \left( \int_{R_1 \leq |x - y_n^2| \leq R_2} |u_n|^{2^*} dx \right)^{\frac{2}{2^*}} (R_2^d - R_1^d)^{1 - \frac{2}{2^*}} \\ &\leq C \|u_n\|_{H^1(\mathbb{R}^d)}^2 (R_2^d - R_1^d)^{1 - \frac{2}{2^*}} \text{ if } 2^* < \infty \text{ i.e. } d \geq 3 \text{ s.t. } H^1(\mathbb{R}^d) \hookrightarrow L^{2^*}(\mathbb{R}^d). \end{aligned}$$

By Sobolev embedding  $H^1(\mathbb{R}^d) \hookrightarrow L^p(\mathbb{R}^d)$  for all  $p \in [2, \infty)$  if  $d = 1, 2$ , then the above argument also holds with  $2^*$  replaced by any  $p > 2$ .

By Arzela-Ascoli's Theorem, the uniform Hölder continuity of the sequence  $(\rho_n)$  above implies the existence of a subsequence  $(\rho_{n_k})$  and a Hölder continuous monotone function  $\rho(R)$  such that

$$\forall R > 0, \quad \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \rho_{n_k}(R) = \rho(R).$$

Let  $m = \lim_{R \rightarrow \infty} \rho(R) \leq M$ . Then there exists a sequence  $R_k \rightarrow \infty$  such that

$$m = \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \rho_{n_k}(R_k) = \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \rho_{n_k}\left(\frac{R_k}{2}\right) = \lim_{R \rightarrow \infty} \rho(R).$$

Indeed, there exist  $(R_k)$ ,  $R_k \rightarrow \infty$  such that  $\lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \rho_{n_k}(R_k) = m$  and for any  $R > 0$ , there exists  $R_k \geq 2R$  such that

$$\begin{aligned} \rho_{n_k}(R) &\leq \rho_{n_k}\left(\frac{R_k}{2}\right) \leq \rho_{n_k}(R_k) \\ \Rightarrow \rho(R) &\leq \liminf_{k \rightarrow \infty} \rho_{n_k}\left(\frac{R_k}{2}\right) \leq \limsup_{k \rightarrow \infty} \rho_{n_k}\left(\frac{R_k}{2}\right) \leq \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \rho_{n_k}(R_k) = m. \end{aligned}$$

### Step 2 Case $m = 0$ : Evanescence

Since  $\rho : [0, \infty) \mapsto [0, m]$  is an increasing function, then  $\rho = 0$  if  $m = 0$ . In particular

$$\lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \rho_{n_k}(1) = \rho(1) = 0 = \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \sup_{y \in \mathbb{R}^d} \int_{B(y,1)} |u_{n_k}|^2 dx.$$

This uniformly local strong convergence in  $L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)$  implies the strong convergence in  $L^q(\mathbb{R}^d)$ ,  $q \in (2, 2^*)$ :  $u_{n_k} \rightarrow 0$  in  $L^q(\mathbb{R}^d)$ . Indeed, by use of the unity partition  $(Q_j)$  (such that each  $Q_j$  is contained in a ball of radius 1), we have the following version of Gagliardo-Nirenberg's inequality:

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |u|^{2+\frac{4}{d}} dx &= \sum_{j \geq 1} \|u\|_{L^{2+\frac{4}{d}}(Q_j)}^{2+\frac{4}{d}} \leq C \sum_{j \geq 1} \|u\|_{L^2(Q_j)}^{\frac{4}{d}} \|\nabla u\|_{L^2(Q_j)}^2 \\ &\leq C \sup_{j \geq 1} \|u\|_{L^2(Q_j)}^{\frac{4}{d}} \sum_{j \geq 1} \|\nabla u\|_{L^2(Q_j)}^2 \leq C \left( \sup_{j \geq 1} \|u\|_{L^2(Q_j)}^2 \right)^{\frac{2}{d}} \|\nabla u\|_{L^2}^2, \end{aligned}$$

for  $d \geq 3$ , and for  $d = 1, 2$ , we can take use of  $\|u\|_{L^4} \leq C \|u\|_{L^2}^{\frac{1}{2}} \|u\|_{H^1}^{\frac{1}{2}}$ . We arrive at  $u_{n_k} \rightarrow 0$  in  $L^{2+\frac{4}{d}}(\mathbb{R}^d)$  or  $L^4(\mathbb{R}^d)$  and the interpolation in the Lebesgue spaces implies  $u_{n_k} \rightarrow 0$  in  $L^q$ ,  $q \in (2, 2^*)$ .

### Step 3 Case $m = M$ : Compactness

For any  $R > 0$ , let  $y_k(R)$  be such that  $\rho_{n_k}(R) = \int_{B(y_k(R), R)} |u_{n_k}|^2 dx$ . There exist  $R_0, k_0$  such that

$$\rho_{n_k}(R_0) = \int_{B(y_k(R_0), R_0)} |u_{n_k}|^2 dx > \frac{M}{2}, \quad \forall k \geq k_0,$$

and for any  $\varepsilon > 0$ , then there exist  $R_\varepsilon, k_\varepsilon \geq k_0$  such that

$$\rho_{n_k}(R_\varepsilon) = \int_{B(y_k(R_\varepsilon), R_\varepsilon)} |u_{n_k}|^2 dx > M - \varepsilon, \quad \forall k \geq k_\varepsilon.$$

Since  $u_{n_k}$  has the total mass  $M$ , the two balls  $B(y_k(R_0), R_0) \cap B(y_k(R_\varepsilon), R_\varepsilon) \neq \emptyset$  and hence there exists  $R_{0\varepsilon}$  such that

$$\int_{B(y_k(R_0), R_{0\varepsilon})} |u_{n_k}|^2 dx > M - \varepsilon, \quad \forall k \geq k_\varepsilon.$$

We may assume that the above holds true for all  $k$  by choosing a possibly larger  $R_{0\varepsilon}$  and hence  $v_k = u_{n_k}(\cdot - y_k(R_0))$  satisfies

$$\forall \varepsilon > 0, \quad \exists R_{0\varepsilon} \text{ s.t. } \forall k \geq 1, \quad \int_{|x| \geq R_{0\varepsilon}} |v_k|^2 dx < \varepsilon.$$

By virtue of the compact embedding  $H^1(\mathbb{R}^d) \hookrightarrow L^2(B(0, R_{0\varepsilon}))$ ,  $v_k \rightarrow u$  in  $L^q(\mathbb{R}^d)$ ,  $q \in [2, 2^*)$ .

#### Step 4 Case $0 < m < M$ : Dichotomy

We decompose  $u_{n_k}$  as

$$\begin{aligned} u_{n_k} &= u_{n_k} \mathbf{1}_{|y - y_k(\frac{R_k}{2})| \leq \frac{R_k}{2}} + u_{n_k} \mathbf{1}_{|y - y_k(\frac{R_k}{2})| \geq R_k} + u_{n_k} \mathbf{1}_{\frac{R_k}{2} < |y - y_k(\frac{R_k}{2})| < R_k} \\ &:= v_k + w_k + z_k, \end{aligned}$$

then

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |z_k|^2 dx &= \left( \int_{B(y_k(\frac{R_k}{2}), R_k)} - \int_{B(y_k(\frac{R_k}{2}), \frac{R_k}{2})} \right) |u_{n_k}|^2 dx \\ &\leq \rho_{n_k}(R_k) - \rho_{n_k}\left(\frac{R_k}{2}\right) \rightarrow 0 \text{ as } k \rightarrow \infty. \end{aligned}$$

We then replace the characterised functions  $\mathbf{1}_{|y - y_k(\frac{R_k}{2})| \leq \frac{R_k}{2}}$ ,  $\mathbf{1}_{|y - y_k(\frac{R_k}{2})| \geq R_k}$  by regular cutoff functions  $\theta_k, \varphi_k$  with compact supports and  $\sup_k \|\nabla \theta_k\|_{L^\infty}, \sup_k \|\nabla \varphi_k\|_{L^\infty} \leq 4R_k^{-1}$  such that  $v_k, w_k$  are compactly supported functions with  $\|v_k\|_{L^2}^2 \rightarrow m$ ,  $\|w_k\|_{L^2}^2 \rightarrow M - m$ . Since

$$\begin{aligned} |\nabla u_{n_k}|^2 - |\nabla v_k|^2 - |\nabla w_k|^2 &= |\nabla u_{n_k}|^2 (1 - |\theta_k|^2 - |\varphi_k|^2) \\ &\quad - |u_{n_k}|^2 (|\nabla \theta_k|^2 + |\nabla \varphi_k|^2) - \operatorname{Re}(\overline{u_{n_k}} \nabla u_{n_k}) \cdot \nabla(\theta_k^2 + \varphi_k^2) \\ &\geq -16|u_{n_k}|^2 (R_k)^{-2} - 8|u_{n_k}| |\nabla u_{n_k}| (R_k)^{-1}, \end{aligned}$$

we have  $\liminf_{k \rightarrow \infty} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |\nabla u_{n_k}|^2 - |\nabla v_k|^2 - |\nabla w_k|^2 dx \geq 0$ . Hence by virtue of  $z_k \rightarrow 0$  in  $L^q(\mathbb{R}^d)$ ,  $q \in [2, 2^*)$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} ||u_{n_k}|^q - |v_k|^q - |w_k|^q| dx &\leq C \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |u_{n_k}|^{q-1} |z_k| dx \\ &\leq C \|u_{n_k}\|_{L^q}^{q-1} \|z_k\|_{L^q} \rightarrow 0 \text{ as } k \rightarrow \infty. \end{aligned}$$

□

**Remark 4.3.** *We can repeat the lemma (established by P.-L. Lions 1983' and we follow the proof in Cazenave 2004') to derive the decomposition profile of a sequence  $(u_n)$  in  $H^s(\mathbb{R}^d)$  established by P. Gérard 1998', which describes the defect of the compactness of Sobolev embeddings up to extraction:*

*Let  $(u_n)$  be a bounded sequence of  $H^s(\mathbb{R}^d)$ ,  $0 < s < \frac{d}{2}$  and  $\frac{d}{2} - s = \frac{d}{p}$ . Then there exist a sequence of scales and cores  $(\lambda_n^{(j)}, x_n^{(j)})_{(j,n) \in \mathbb{N}^2}$  in the sense that*

$$j \neq k \Rightarrow \text{either } \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left| \log \left( \frac{\lambda_n^{(j)}}{\lambda_n^{(k)}} \right) \right| = \infty \text{ or } \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{|x_n^{(j)} - x_n^{(k)}|}{\lambda_n^{(j)}} = \infty,$$

*a sequence  $(\varphi_j)$  in  $H^s(\mathbb{R}^d)$  and a sequence  $(r_n^{(j)})$  of functions such that*

$$\forall J \in \mathbb{N}, \quad u_{\phi(n)}(x) = \sum_{j=0}^J \frac{1}{(\lambda_n^{(j)})^{\frac{d}{2}-s}} \varphi_j \left( \frac{x - x_n^{(j)}}{\lambda_n^{(j)}} \right) + r_n^{(J)}(x),$$

$$\lim_{J \rightarrow \infty} \limsup_{n \rightarrow \infty} \|r_n^{(J)}\|_{L^p} = 0,$$

$$\forall J \in \mathbb{N}, \quad \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left( \|u_{\phi(n)}\|_{H^s}^2 - \sum_{j=0}^J \|\varphi_j\|_{H^s}^2 - \|r_n^{(J)}\|_{H^s}^2 \right) = 0.$$

*We also have a version of the critical case, e.g. the case  $d = 2$ ,  $s = 1$ ,  $p \in (2, 2^*)$ ,  $\lambda_n^{(j)} = 1$  considered by Hmidi-Keraani 2007.*

---

[19.01.2018]  
[26.01.2018]

## 4.3 Orbital stability

### 4.3.1 A second minimiser problem

**Theorem 4.2** (Variational characterisation of the solitons). *Let  $M > 0$ ,  $1 < p < 1 + \frac{4}{d}$  i.e.  $s_c = \frac{d}{2} - \frac{2}{p-1} < 0$  and let  $Q$  be the fundamental state in Theorem 4.1. Then the minimisation problem*

$$J_M = \inf \{ E(u) \mid u \in H^1(\mathbb{R}^d), \|u\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)}^2 = M \} \quad (4.15)$$

is achieved by the following family of functions

$$Q_\mu(x - x_0)e^{i\gamma_0}, \quad x_0 \in \mathbb{R}^d, \quad \gamma_0 \in \mathbb{R},$$

where  $E(u) = \frac{1}{2} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |\nabla u|^2 dx - \frac{1}{p+1} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |u|^{p+1} dx$  is the energy functional defined in (1.10),  $Q_\mu = \mu^{\frac{2}{p-1}} Q(\mu x)$  and  $\mu = \mu(M) = \left(\frac{M}{\|Q\|_{L^2}^2}\right)^{-\frac{1}{2s_c}}$ . Furthermore, all the minimising sequence is relatively compact in  $H^1(\mathbb{R}^d)$  up to translation and rotation: For the sequence  $(u_n)$  in  $H^1(\mathbb{R}^d)$  such that

$$\|u_n\|_{L^2}^2 \rightarrow M, \quad E(u_n) \rightarrow J_M,$$

there exist  $(x_n) \subset \mathbb{R}^d$ ,  $(\gamma_n) \subset \mathbb{R}$  and a subsequence  $(\phi(n))$  such that

$$u_{\phi(n)}(\cdot - x_{\phi(n)})e^{i\gamma_{\phi(n)}} \rightarrow Q_\mu \text{ in } H^1(\mathbb{R}^d).$$

*Sketchy proof. Step 1 Calculation of  $J_M$ ,  $M > 0$*

We have the following properties for  $J_M$ :

- $J_M$  has a lower bound:  $J_M > -\infty$ . Indeed, by Gagliardo-Nirenberg's inequality  $\|u\|_{L^{p+1}(\mathbb{R}^d)} \leq C \|u\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)}^{1 - (\frac{d}{2} - \frac{d}{p+1})} \|\nabla u\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)}^{\frac{d}{2} - \frac{d}{p+1}}$ , we have for  $\|u\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)}^2 = M$  that

$$E(u) \geq \frac{1}{2} \|\nabla u\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)}^2 - CM^{\frac{p+1}{2}(1 - \frac{d}{2} + \frac{d}{p+1})} \|\nabla u\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)}^{\frac{d(p-1)}{2}},$$

with  $\frac{d(p-1)}{2} < 2$  since  $p < 1 + \frac{4}{d}$ ,

and hence  $J_M > -\infty$  (by Young's inequality) has a lower bound.

- $J_M$  has a negative upper bound:  $J_M < 0$ . Indeed, fix some  $u \in H^1(\mathbb{R}^d)$  with  $\|u\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)}^2 = M$ . Then the rescaled function  $u^\lambda(x) = \lambda^{\frac{d}{2}} u(\lambda x)$ ,  $\lambda > 0$  satisfies  $\|u^\lambda\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)}^2 = \|u\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)}^2 = M$  and

$$E(u^\lambda) = \lambda^2 \left[ \frac{1}{2} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |\nabla u|^2 dx - \frac{1}{(p+1)\lambda^{(p-1)|s_c|}} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |u|^{p+1} dx \right],$$

and hence  $E(u^\lambda) < 0$  for  $\lambda > 0$  small enough.

- $J_M$  is homogeneous:  $J_M = M^{\frac{1-s_c}{|s_c|}} J_1$ . Indeed, for any  $u \in H^1(\mathbb{R}^d)$ , the rescaled function  $u_\lambda(x) = \lambda^{\frac{2}{p-1}} u(\lambda x)$ ,  $\lambda > 0$  satisfies  $\|u_\lambda\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)}^2 = \lambda^{-2s_c} \|u\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)}^2 = \lambda^{-2s_c} M$  and

$$E(u_\lambda) = \lambda^{2(1-s_c)} E(u),$$

and hence  $J_{\lambda^{-2s_c} M} = \lambda^{2(1-s_c)} J_M$  and we can choose in particular  $\lambda = M^{\frac{1}{2s_c}}$ .



## Step 2 Existence of the minimiser

Let  $(u_n)$  be a minimizing sequence and we are going to show its compactness (up to extraction of subsequence and translation) by Lemma 4.3. Since

- Evanescence of the sequence  $(u_n)_n$  is impossible: Suppose by contradiction that  $u_{n_k} \rightarrow 0$  in  $L^{p+1}(\mathbb{R}^d)$  as  $k \rightarrow \infty$ , then

$$\begin{aligned} J_M &= \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} E(u_{n_k}) = \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \left[ \frac{1}{2} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |\nabla u_{n_k}|^2 dx - \frac{1}{p+1} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |u_{n_k}|^{p+1} dx \right] \\ &= \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |\nabla u_{n_k}|^2 dx \geq 0, \end{aligned}$$

which is in contradiction with  $J_M < 0$ .

- Dichotomy of the sequence  $(u_n)_n$  is impossible: Suppose by contraction that there exist two sequences  $v_{n_k}, w_{n_k}$  with disjoint supports such that

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |v_{n_k}|^2 dx &\rightarrow \alpha M, & \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |w_{n_k}|^2 dx &\rightarrow (1-\alpha)M, & \alpha &\in (0, 1), \\ \|u_{n_k}\|_{L^{p+1}}^{p+1} - \|v_{n_k}\|_{L^{p+1}}^{p+1} - \|w_{n_k}\|_{L^{p+1}}^{p+1} &\rightarrow 0, \\ \liminf_{k \rightarrow \infty} [\|\nabla u_{n_k}\|_{L^2}^2 - \|\nabla v_{n_k}\|_{L^2}^2 - \|\nabla w_{n_k}\|_{L^2}^2] &\geq 0, \end{aligned}$$

then

$$J_M = \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} E(u_{n_k}) \geq \limsup_{k \rightarrow \infty} [E(v_{n_k}) + E(w_{n_k})] \geq J_{\alpha M} + J_{(1-\alpha)M},$$

and hence by the homogeneity property of  $J_M$  and  $J_1 < 0$  we have

$$1 \leq \alpha^{\frac{1-s_c}{|s_c|}} + (1-\alpha)^{\frac{1-s_c}{|s_c|}}, \text{ with } \frac{1-s_c}{|s_c|} > 1,$$

which is an contradiction with the fact that if  $\theta > 1$ , then  $f(\alpha) := \alpha^\theta + (1-\alpha)^\theta < f(0) = f(1) = 1$  for all  $\alpha \in (0, 1)$ .

by Lemma 4.3, there exist  $(x_k) \subset \mathbb{R}^d$  such that  $u_{n_k}(x - x_k) \rightarrow u$  in  $L^2(\mathbb{R}^d) \cap L^{p+1}(\mathbb{R}^d)$ , and hence

$$J_M = \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} E(u_{n_k}) = \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} E(u_{n_k}(x - x_k)) \geq E(u).$$

Therefore  $u \in H^1(\mathbb{R}^d)$  is a minimiser and  $\lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} E(u_{n_k}) = E(u)$ ,  $u_{n_k}(x - x_k) \rightarrow u$  in  $H^1(\mathbb{R}^d)$ .

## Step 3 Classification of the minimisers

We follow the strategy in Subsection 4.1 to classify the minimisers of the minimiser problem (4.15):

- If  $u$  is a minimiser of (4.15), then by Lemma 4.2, we know that  $|u| \geq 0$  is also a minimiser of (4.15).
- If  $u \geq 0$  is a minimiser of (4.15), then we follow the idea in the proof of Proposition 4.3 to derive the existence of  $\tilde{\mu} = \tilde{\mu}(M) \in \mathbb{R}$  (independent of the minimisers) such that

$$\Delta u + u^p = \tilde{\mu}u, \quad u \geq 0, \quad u \in H^1(\mathbb{R}^d). \quad (4.16)$$

More precisely, since whenever  $h \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^d)$  such that  $\frac{d}{dt}\Big|_{t=0} (\|u+th\|_{L^2}^2) = 2 \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} uh \, dx = 0$  then  $\frac{d}{dt}\Big|_{t=0} E(u+th) = \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} (\nabla u \cdot \nabla h - u^p h) \, dx = 0$ , we have (4.16) for some  $\tilde{\mu} \in \mathbb{R}$ . We can calculate  $\tilde{\mu}$ : We test (4.16) by  $u \geq 0$  to arrive at

$$- \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |\nabla u|^2 \, dx + \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |u|^{p+1} \, dx = \tilde{\mu} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |u|^2 \, dx = \tilde{\mu}M,$$

and on the other side, we test (4.16) by  $(\frac{d}{2} + x \cdot \nabla)u$  and take use of Pohozaev's identity (3.1) to arrive at (comparing the following righthand side with (3.5)-(3.6))

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= \tilde{\mu} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} (\frac{d}{2} + x \cdot \nabla)u u \, dx = \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} (\frac{d}{2} + x \cdot \nabla)u (\Delta u + u^p) \, dx \\ &= - \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |\nabla u|^2 \, dx + \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} (\frac{d}{2} - \frac{d}{p+1})u^{p+1} \, dx. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |\nabla u|^2 \, dx &= (\frac{d}{2} - \frac{d}{p+1}) \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} u^{p+1} \, dx, \\ \tilde{\mu}M &= (1 - \frac{d}{2} + \frac{d}{p+1}) \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} u^{p+1} \, dx, \\ J_M = E(u) &= (\frac{d}{4} - \frac{d+2}{2(p+1)}) \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} u^{p+1} \, dx, \end{aligned}$$

and hence when  $1 < p < 1 + \frac{4}{d}$ ,

$$\tilde{\mu} = \tilde{\mu}(M) = \frac{J_M}{M} \frac{1 - \frac{d}{2} + \frac{d}{p+1}}{\frac{d}{4} - \frac{d+2}{2(p+1)}} = J_1 M^{-\frac{1}{s_c}} \frac{1 - \frac{d}{2} + \frac{d}{p+1}}{\frac{d}{4} - \frac{d+2}{2(p+1)}} > 0.$$

- If  $u \in H^1$ ,  $u \geq 0$  satisfies (4.16), then the rescaled solution  $\tilde{u}_{\mu^{-1}}(x) = \frac{1}{\mu^{\frac{1}{p-1}}} u(\frac{x}{\mu})$ ,  $\mu = \sqrt{\tilde{\mu}}$  satisfies the equation (4.13)

$$\Delta v + v^p = v, \quad v \geq 0, \quad v \in H^1(\mathbb{R}^d). \quad (4.17)$$

We have the nontrivial symmetry result established by [Gidas, Ni and Nirenberg, 1979] which we do not prove here:

If  $v$  satisfies (4.17), then there exists  $x_0 \in \mathbb{R}^d$  such that  $v(x - x_0) \in H_r^1(\mathbb{R}^d)$ .

Hence by Propositions 4.4 and 4.5, the solution of (4.17) is indeed unique:

$$v(x - x_0) = \tilde{v}(|x - x_0|) = Q(|x - x_0|), \text{ for some } x_0 \in \mathbb{R}^d,$$

where  $Q$  is the fundamental solution in Proposition 4.5.

- Conclusion: If  $u$  is a minimiser of the minimiser problem (4.15), then there exist  $(\gamma_0, x_0) \in \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^d$  such that

$$u(x) = Q_\mu(x - x_0)e^{i\gamma_0}, \text{ with } Q_\mu(x) = \mu^{\frac{2}{p-1}}Q(\mu x),$$

where

$$\mu = \mu(M) = \frac{\mu(M)}{\mu(\|Q\|_{L^2}^2)} = \left(\frac{\tilde{\mu}(M)}{\tilde{\mu}(\|Q\|_{L^2}^2)}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}} = \left(\frac{M}{\|Q\|_{L^2}^2}\right)^{-\frac{1}{2sc}}.$$

□

### 4.3.2 Orbital stability

Recall the “natural” stability notion of the solitary waves  $e^{it}Q(r)$  in  $H^1$ : Let  $u_0 \in H^1$ ,  $1 < p < 1 + \frac{4}{d}$  and  $u \in C([0, \infty); H^1)$  be the global solution of (NLS) with the initial data  $u_0$ . Then for all  $\varepsilon > 0$ , there exists  $\delta(\varepsilon) > 0$  such that for all  $u_0 \in H^1$ :

$$\|u_0 - Q\|_{H^1} < \delta \text{ implies } \sup_{t \geq 0} \|u(t, x) - e^{it}Q(x)\|_{H^1} < \varepsilon.$$

This *strong* stability property is *not* suitable for (NLS) by virtue of the symmetries of the equation (NLS). Indeed the scaling invariance and the Galilean invariance in Subsection 1.1.3 supply two obvious examples of strong instability:

- By scaling symmetry, for any  $\lambda > 0$ , there exists a solution  $u_\lambda(t, x) = \lambda^{\frac{2}{p-1}}Q(\lambda x)e^{i\lambda^2 t}$  of (NLS) with the initial data  $(u_0)_\lambda(x) = \lambda^{\frac{2}{p-1}}Q(\lambda x)$ . We have

$$\|(u_0)_\lambda - Q\|_{H^1} \rightarrow 0 \text{ as } \lambda \rightarrow 1,$$

while for any  $\lambda \neq 1$ ,

$$\sup_{t \geq 0} \|u_\lambda(t, x) - e^{it}Q(x)\|_{H^1} = \sup_{t \geq 0} \|\lambda^{\frac{2}{p-1}}e^{i\lambda^2 t}Q(\lambda x) - e^{it}Q(x)\|_{H^1} \geq \|Q\|_{H^1},$$

e.g. when  $t = 2n\pi$ ,  $\lambda^2 t = (2n + 1)\pi$ ,  $n \gg 1$ ,  $\|u_\lambda(t, x) - e^{it}Q(x)\|_{H^1} \geq \|Q\|_{H^1}$ .

- By Galilean invariance, for any  $v \in \mathbb{R}^d$ , there exists a solution  $u_v = e^{i(x \cdot v - |v|^2 t + t)} Q(x - 2vt)$  of (NLS) with the initial data  $(u_0)_v = e^{i v \cdot x} Q(x)$ . We have

$$\|(u_0)_v - Q\|_{H^1} \rightarrow 0 \text{ as } |v| \rightarrow 0,$$

while due to the decoupling of the two bubbles  $Q(x)$  and  $Q(x - vt)$  as  $t \rightarrow \infty$  when  $v \neq 0$ ,

$$\forall 0 \neq v \in \mathbb{R}^d, \quad \sup_{t \geq 0} \|u_v(t, x) - e^{it} Q(x)\|_{H^1} \geq \|Q\|_{H^1}.$$

By the variational characterisation of the solitary waves in Theorem 4.2, we have the orbital stability results:

**Theorem 4.3** (Orbital stability of the solitary waves). *Let  $1 < p < 1 + \frac{4}{d}$ ,  $\kappa = -1$ . Then for all  $\varepsilon > 0$ , there exists  $\delta(\varepsilon) > 0$  such that for all  $\|u_0 - Q\|_{H^1(\mathbb{R}^d)} < \delta$ , there exist  $(x(t), \gamma(t)) \in \mathbb{R}^d \times \mathbb{R}$  so that the corresponding solution  $u \in C([0, \infty); H^1)$  of (NLS) satisfying*

$$\sup_{t \geq 0} \|u(t, x) - Q(x - x(t))e^{i\gamma(t)}\|_{H^1(\mathbb{R}^d)} < \varepsilon.$$

*Proof.* Suppose by contradiction that there exist  $\varepsilon_0 > 0$ , a sequence of times  $t_n \geq 0$  and a sequence of solutions  $u_n \in C(\mathbb{R}; H^1)$  such that

$$\begin{aligned} \|u_n(0, x) - Q\|_{H^1} &\rightarrow 0 \text{ as } n \rightarrow \infty, \\ \|u_n(t_n, x) - Q(x - x_0)e^{i\gamma_0}\|_{H^1} &> \varepsilon_0 > 0, \quad \forall x_0 \in \mathbb{R}^d, \forall \gamma_0 \in \mathbb{R}. \end{aligned}$$

Then we have

$$\|u_n(0, \cdot)\|_{L^2}^2 \rightarrow \|Q\|_{L^2}^2 := M, \quad E(u_n(0, x)) \rightarrow E(Q) = J_M.$$

By the mass and energy conservation laws, we have

$$\|u_n(t_n, \cdot)\|_{L^2}^2 = \|u_n(0, \cdot)\|_{L^2}^2 \rightarrow M, \quad E(u_n(t_n, x)) = E(u_n(0, x)) \rightarrow J_M,$$

and hence by Theorem 4.2, there exist  $(\phi(n)) \subset \mathbb{N}$ ,  $(x_{\phi(n)}) \subset \mathbb{R}^d$ ,  $(\gamma_{\phi(n)}) \subset \mathbb{R}$  such that

$$u_n(t_n, x - x_{\phi(n)})e^{i\gamma_{\phi(n)}} \rightarrow Q \text{ in } H^1(\mathbb{R}^d), \text{ as } n \rightarrow \infty,$$

which is in contradiction to the assumption. □

**Remark 4.4.** *If  $p \geq 1 + \frac{4}{d}$ ,  $\kappa = -1$  then the solitary wave  $u(t, x) = e^{it}Q(x)$  is unstable in the sense that there exists  $(Q_n)_n \subset H^1(\mathbb{R}^d)$  such that  $Q_n \rightarrow Q$  in  $H^1(\mathbb{R}^d)$  while the corresponding solution  $u_n(t, x)$  blows up in finite time. Indeed, as  $\Delta Q - Q + Q^p = 0$ , if  $p = 1 + \frac{4}{d}$ , then  $E(Q) = 0$  and  $E(\lambda Q) < 0$  for any  $\lambda > 1$ , and hence we have the blowup results by Theorem 3.1 for the solutions with initial data  $(1 + \frac{1}{n})Q$ . Similarly we notice that if  $p > 1 + \frac{4}{d}$ , then  $\int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |\nabla u|^2 dx - (\frac{d}{2} - \frac{d}{p+1}) \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} |u|^{p+1} dx = 0$  if  $u = Q$  and  $< 0$  if  $u = \lambda Q$ ,  $\lambda > 1$ .*

---

[26.01.2018]  
[02.02.2018]

## 5 Conserved energies

In this section we explain briefly the existence of a family of conserved energies for the one dimensional defocusing cubic nonlinear Schrödinger equation (NLS) (with  $d = 1$ ,  $p = 3$ ,  $\kappa = 1$ ) established by [Koch-Tataru 2016] (see also Killip-Visan-Zhang). Recall that for the initial data  $u_0 \in \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R})$ , there exists a unique solution  $u \in C(\mathbb{R}; \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}))$  solving the 1-d cubic nonlinear Schrödinger equation (NLS) (see Remark 2.10), and the transmission coefficient  $T = T(z)$  associated to the Lax equation (1.21) is invariant by the cubic Schrödinger flow (see (1.25)). We make use of this fact to establish the family of conserved energies  $\mathcal{E}_s = \mathcal{E}_s(u)$  in terms of  $T = T(z; u)$  which is equivalent to the Sobolev norm of the solution  $\|u\|_{H^s}^2$ ,  $\forall s > -\frac{1}{2}$ .

### Step 1 Expansions of the “transmission coefficient” $T^{-1}(z)$ and its logarithm $\ln T^{-1}(z)$ on the upper half plane

Recall the direct scattering transform introduced in Subsection 1.2. If  $u(t, x) \in C(\mathbb{R}; \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}))$  is the solution of the one dimensional defocusing cubic nonlinear Schrödinger equation (NLS),  $z = \xi \in \mathbb{R}$  (the continuous spectrum of the self-adjoint Lax operator), then we have the Jost solution  $j^{-1}(x; z)$  of the Lax equation (1.21)

$$\psi_x = \begin{pmatrix} -iz & u \\ \bar{u} & iz \end{pmatrix} \psi,$$

with the asymptotic behaviours at infinity:

$$j^{-1}(x; z) = \begin{pmatrix} e^{-izx} \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + o(1) \text{ as } x \rightarrow -\infty,$$

$$j^{-1}(x; z) = T^{-1}(z) \begin{pmatrix} e^{-izx} \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + R(t, z)T^{-1}(z) \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ e^{izx} \end{pmatrix} + o(1) \text{ as } x \rightarrow +\infty.$$

Hence the “transmission coefficient”  $T^{-1}(z)$  can be calculated as the first component of the renormalised Jost solution  $l^{-,1}(x; z) = e^{izx} j^{-,1}(x; z)$  as  $x \rightarrow \infty$  (recalling the iterative formulation of  $l^{-,1}$  in Subsection 1.2.1):

$$T^{-1}(z) = \lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} (e^{izx} j^{-,1}(x; z)) = 1 + \wedge + \wedge\wedge + \wedge\wedge\wedge + \wedge\wedge\wedge\wedge + \cdots := 1 + \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} T_{2j}(z), \quad (5.18)$$

where the graphic symbols  $\wedge, \wedge\wedge, \cdots$  denote the multilinear integrals as

$$\begin{aligned} \wedge &= T_2(z) = \int_{x < y} e^{2iz(y-x)} u(y) \bar{u}(x) \, dx \, dy, \\ \wedge\wedge &= T_4(z) = \int_{x_1 < y_1 < x_2 < y_2} \prod_{n=1}^2 e^{2iz(y_n - x_n)} u(y_n) \bar{u}(x_n) \, dx \, dy, \quad \cdots \end{aligned}$$

For any  $z \in \bar{\mathcal{U}}$ ,  $\mathcal{U} = \{z \in \mathbb{C} \mid \text{Im } z > 0\}$  the upper half plane, we can define the Jost solution  $j^{-,1}(x; z)$  and this provides a holomorphic extension of  $T^{-1}(z)$  to the closed upper half plane  $z \in \bar{\mathcal{U}}$ , such that  $|T| \leq 1$  on the real line and  $T \rightarrow 1$  at infinity. By maximum principle,  $|T^{-1}| \geq 1$  on  $\bar{\mathcal{U}}$ .

Since  $\ln$  is analytic near 1 and expands formally as  $\ln(1+a) = a - \frac{1}{2}a^2 + \frac{1}{3}a^3 + \cdots$ , the formal series for  $T^{-1}$  yields a formal series for  $\ln T^{-1}$ :

$$\ln T^{-1} = \left(T_2\right) + \left(T_4 - \frac{1}{2}(T_2)^2\right) + \left(T_6 - T_2 T_4 + \frac{1}{3}(T_2)^2\right) + \cdots := \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} \tilde{T}_{2j},$$

where each  $\tilde{T}_{2j}(z)$  is homogeneous of degree  $2j$  in terms of  $\{u, \bar{u}\}$  and is a linear combination of multilinear integrals of the form

$$\int_{\Sigma_{2j}} \prod_{n=1}^j e^{2iz(y_n - x_n)} u(y_n) \bar{u}(x_n) \, dx \, dy,$$

with  $\Sigma_{2j}$  denoting an ordering obeying the constraint  $\{x_n < y_n, \forall 1 \leq n \leq j\}$ .

We can calculate for example that

$$\begin{aligned} (T_2)^2 &= \left( \int_{x_1 < y_1} e^{2iz(y_1 - x_1)} u(y_1) \bar{u}(x_1) \, dx_1 \, dy_1 \right) \left( \int_{x_2 < y_2} e^{2iz(y_2 - x_2)} u(y_2) \bar{u}(x_2) \, dx_2 \, dy_2 \right) \\ &= 4 \int_{x_1 < x_2 < y_1 < y_2} \prod_{n=1}^2 e^{2iz(y_n - x_n)} u(y_n) \bar{u}(x_n) \, dx \, dy \\ &\quad + 2 \int_{x_1 < y_1 < x_2 < y_2} \prod_{n=1}^2 e^{2iz(y_n - x_n)} u(y_n) \bar{u}(x_n) \, dx \, dy := 4/\wedge + 2\wedge\wedge, \end{aligned}$$

which is homogeneous of degree 4 in  $\{u, \bar{u}\}$ , and the first terms in the expansion of  $\ln T^{-1}$  read as

$$\ln T^{-1}(z) = \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} \tilde{T}_{2j}(z) = \wedge + (-2\curvearrowright) + (12\curvearrowright\curvearrowright + 4\curvearrowright\curvearrowright) + \cdots \quad (5.19)$$

Indeed, we can prove that  $\tilde{T}_{2j}$  is a linear combination of *connected* symbols, that is,  $\Sigma_{2j}$  represents a complete ordering  $\{x_1 < x_2 < \cdots < y_1 | x_n < y_n, 1 \leq n \leq j\}$  where the first and the last arcs are connected. To this end we introduce a Hopf algebra structure:

- We consider the set  $H^\sqcup$  of the words in the alphabet  $\{\curvearrowright, \curvearrowleft\}$  and introduce the shuffle product  $\sqcup$  between two words as the sum of all the words obtained by shuffling these two words such that  $H^\sqcup$  becomes a ring of formal power series with the words as unknowns, with the shuffle product defining the commutative, associative and distributive multiplication;
- We restrict ourselves in the subalgebra  $H$  consisting of nonintersecting words and the length  $2j$  of the nonintersecting words in  $H$  introduces a grading on  $H$  such that words with length  $2j$  have degree  $j$  and  $H_m = H/I_m$  is a finite dimensional algebra where  $I_m$  is the ideal consisting of the elements of degree  $> m$ ;
- We introduce a coproduct  $\Delta : H \mapsto H \otimes H$  on  $H$  as the sum of all the splittings  $\Delta a = \sum_{a_1 a_2 = a, a_1, a_2 \in H} a_1 \otimes a_2, \forall a \in H$ , then the coproduct is coassociative which also satisfies the compatibility condition  $\Delta(a \sqcup b) = \Delta a \sqcup \Delta b$  with the shuffle product of the tensor product defined as  $(a \otimes b) \sqcup (c \otimes d) = (a \sqcup c) \otimes (b \sqcup d)$ ;
- We call an element  $g \in H$  group-like if  $\Delta g = g \otimes g$ , then the set of all group-like elements in  $H$  endowed with the shuffle product becomes a group  $G$ . On the other side, we call an element  $p \in H$  primitive if  $\Delta p = 1 \otimes p + p \otimes 1$ , then the primitive element is formal linear combinations of connected symbols and all the primitive elements form a subspace  $P \subset H$ . The subgroup  $G$  and the subspace  $P$  are related by  $G = \exp P$ ;
- In conclusion, the element  $T^{-1}$  (5.18) is a group-like element and hence its logarithm  $\ln T^{-1}$  (5.19) is a primitive element such that its homogeneous parts  $\tilde{T}_{2j}$  are linear combinations of connected symbols.

We are now interested in two issues:

- We would like to show the convergence of the expansions (5.18)-(5.19), and we are in particular interested in the decay rates of the terms  $T_{2j}(z), \tilde{T}_{2j}(z)$  as  $z \rightarrow i\infty$ , when  $u(x) \in H^s(\mathbb{R})$ . This will be done in Step 3.

Roughly speaking, for  $u \in \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R})$ , if  $z = i\tau/2$ , the bulk of the integrals in  $T_{2j}(z), \tilde{T}_{2j}(z)$  comes from the regions  $\{y_n - x_n \lesssim \tau^{-1}, 1 \leq n \leq j\}$ , and in the case of  $T_{2j}(z)$  the volume of the region is comparable to  $\tau^{-j}$  while in the case of  $\tilde{T}_{2j}(z)$  the volume of the region is comparable to  $C(j)\tau^{-2j+1}$  which is much smaller than  $\tau^{-j}$  if  $j \geq 2$ . Hence for  $u(x) \in \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R})$  we expect to have the expansion of  $\ln T^{-1}$  in the powers of  $z^{-1}$  at infinity:

$$\ln T^{-1}(z) = i \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} \mathcal{E}_j (2z)^{-j}, \text{ as } |z| \rightarrow \infty,$$

where the (invariant) coefficients  $\mathcal{E}_j$  are called energies and in particular

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{E}_1 &= \int_{\mathbb{R}} |u|^2 dx, \\ \mathcal{E}_2 &= -\text{Im} \int_{\mathbb{R}} u' \bar{u} dx, \\ \mathcal{E}_3 &= \int_{\mathbb{R}} (|u'|^2 + |u|^4) dx, \end{aligned}$$

are the (rescaled) mass, momentum and energy  $M, P, E$  defined in (1.8), (1.9), (1.10) respectively. We will indeed be interested in the case  $u \in H^s$  and study the expansions (5.18), (5.19) by establishing the decay rates for  $T_{2j}(z), \tilde{T}_{2j}(z)$  as  $|z| \rightarrow \infty$  in terms of  $\|u\|_{H^s}^2$ .

- We would like to describe  $\|u\|_{H^s}^2$  in terms of  $T^{-1}(z)$ , which is done in Step 2.

**Step 2 Description of  $\|u\|_{H^s}^2$  in terms of the quadratic term  $T_2(z) = \tilde{T}_2(z) = \wedge$**

Let  $z \in \mathcal{U}$  and let us calculate the quadratic term  $\wedge$  and relate it to the Fourier transform of  $u$ :  $\hat{u}(\xi) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{\mathbb{R}} e^{-i\xi x} u(x) dx$  as

$$\wedge = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{\mathbb{R}^3} \int_{-\infty}^y e^{2iz(y-x)} e^{iy\eta} \hat{u}(\eta) e^{-ix\xi} \bar{\hat{u}}(\xi) dx dy d\xi d\eta,$$

where integration by parts in  $x$  implies

$$\wedge = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{\mathbb{R}^3} \frac{-1}{2iz + i\xi} e^{iy\eta - ix\xi} \hat{u}(\eta) \bar{\hat{u}}(\xi) dy d\xi d\eta = \int_{\mathbb{R}} \frac{i}{2z + \xi} \hat{u}(\xi) \bar{\hat{u}}(\xi) d\xi,$$



and hence

$$\frac{1}{\pi} \operatorname{Re} \wedge(z/2) = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \frac{\operatorname{Im} z}{|z - \xi|^2} |\hat{u}(\xi)|^2 d\xi := \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \frac{\operatorname{Im} z}{|z - \xi|^2} d\mu(\xi), \quad (5.20)$$

which is the harmonic function on the upper half plane with the trace measure  $d\mu = |\hat{u}(\xi)|^2 d\xi$ . Hence by a change of integral contour we have the following description of the  $H^s$ ,  $-\frac{1}{2} < s < 0$ -norm of  $u$ :

$$\begin{aligned} \|u\|_{H^s}^2 &= \int_{\mathbb{R}} (1 + \xi^2)^s |\hat{u}(\xi)|^2 d\xi \\ &= -2 \sin(\pi s) \int_1^\infty (\tau^2 - 1)^s \frac{1}{\pi} \operatorname{Re} \wedge(i\tau/2) d\tau. \end{aligned} \quad (5.21)$$

For general  $u \in H^s$  with  $N = [s] \geq 0$ , we have the finite expansion for the above harmonic function evaluated at  $z = i\tau$  with  $\tau \rightarrow \infty$ :

$$\frac{1}{\pi} \operatorname{Re} \wedge(i\tau/2) = \sum_{l=0}^N (-1)^l H_{2l} \tau^{-2l-1} + (-1)^{N+1} H_{>2N}(\tau) \tau^{-2N-1},$$

where

$$H_{2l} = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \xi^{2l} d\mu(\xi), \quad H_{>2N}(\tau) = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \frac{\xi^{2N+2}}{\tau^2 + \xi^2} d\mu(\xi).$$

Then the description of the Sobolev norm  $\|u\|_{H^s}^2$  in terms of  $\wedge$  reads as

$$\begin{aligned} \|u\|_{H^s}^2 &= -2 \sin(\pi s) \int_1^\infty (\tau^2 - 1)^s \left( \frac{1}{\pi} \operatorname{Re} \wedge(i\tau/2) - \sum_{l=0}^N (-1)^l H_{2l} \tau^{-2l-1} \right) d\tau \\ &\quad + \pi \sum_{l=0}^N \binom{s}{l} H_{2l}. \end{aligned} \quad (5.22)$$

**Step 3 Well-definedness of the “transmission coefficient”  $T^{-1}(z)$  if  $u \in H^s$  and the estimates for higher order terms  $T_{2j}(z)$ ,  $\tilde{T}_{2j}(z)$**

We introduce the functional spaces  $U^2, V^2$  and  $DU^2$ , as substitutes for  $\dot{H}^{\frac{1}{2}}$  and  $\dot{H}^{-\frac{1}{2}}$ , which are more suitable for the estimates for the integrals in  $T_{2j}(z), \tilde{T}_{2j}(z)$ . We define  $V^2$  as the space of the functions  $v$  on  $\mathbb{R}$  such that the following norm is finite

$$\|v\|_{V^2} = \sup_{-\infty < t_1 < \dots < t_L = +\infty} \left( \sum_{j=1}^{L-1} |v(t_{j+1}) - v(t_j)|^2 \right)^{\frac{1}{2}}, \quad \text{where we set } v(\infty) = 0.$$

We call the step function of form  $\sum_{j=1}^{L-1} \phi_j \mathbf{1}_{[t_j, t_{j+1})}$  with  $\sum_j |\phi_j|^2 = 1$  a  $U^2$  atom and a  $U^2$  function  $u$  is an  $\ell^1$ -sum of  $U^2$  atoms such that  $\|u\|_{U^2} = \inf_{(\lambda_k)} \{ \sum_k |\lambda_k| \mid u = \sum_k \lambda_k u_k, (\lambda_k) \in \ell^1(\mathbb{N}) \text{ and } u_k \text{ are } U^2\text{-atoms} \} < \infty$ . We have the following pleasant properties concerning  $V^2, U^2$ -norms:

- The  $V^2$ -functions  $v$  have left and right limits everywhere and  $v(\infty) = 0$  such that  $\|v\|_{L^\infty} \leq \|v\|_{V^2}$  and obviously  $\|uv\|_{V^2} \leq \|u\|_{V^2}\|v\|_{L^\infty} + \|u\|_{L^\infty}\|v\|_{V^2}$ ;
- The  $U^2$ -functions  $u$  are right continuous and  $u(-\infty) = 0$  such that  $\|u\|_{V^2} \leq \sqrt{2}\|u\|_{U^2}$  and we have the embedding estimates  $\|u\|_{B_{2,\infty}^{\frac{1}{2}}} \lesssim \|u\|_{V^2} \lesssim \|u\|_{U^2} \lesssim \|u\|_{B_{2,1}^{\frac{1}{2}}}$ ;
- There exists a bilinear form  $B(v, u)$  which induces an isometric isomorphism from  $V^2 \mapsto (U^2)^*$  and from  $U^2 \mapsto (V_C^2)^*$ ,  $V_C^2 = \{v \in V^2 \mid v \text{ is continuous, } v(\pm\infty) = 0\}$ , such that <sup>3</sup>

$$\begin{aligned} \|v\|_{V^2} &= \sup_{u \in U^2} \{B(v, u) \mid \|u\|_{U^2} = 1\}, \\ \|u\|_{U^2} &= \sup_{v \in V^2} \{B(v, u) \mid \|v\|_{V^2} = 1\}, \end{aligned}$$

where by an abuse of notation  $B(v, u) = \int_{\mathbb{R}} v du$ .

We introduce  $DU^2$  functions as the distributional derivatives of  $U^2$  functions:  $DU^2 = \{u' \mid u \in U^2\}$  and hence  $DU^2$  function is distribution function with the finite norm  $\|f\|_{DU^2} = \sup \{\int_{\mathbb{R}} f v dx \mid \|v\|_{V^2} \leq 1\}$ . Thus we have

$$\|uv\|_{DU^2} \leq 2\|u\|_{DU^2}\|v\|_{V^2} \leq 4\|u\|_{DU^2}\|v\|_{U^2}.$$

For any  $z \in \mathcal{U}$ , we define the one step operator  $A$  as

$$A(\phi)(t) = \int_{x < y < t} e^{2iz(y-x)} u(y) \bar{u}(x) \phi(x) dx dy,$$

then the terms in the expansion (5.18):  $T^{-1} = 1 + \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} T_{2j}$  read as

$$T_2 = \lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} A(1)(t), \quad T_4 = \lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} A^2(1)(t), \quad T_{2j} = \lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} A^j(1)(t), \dots$$

and  $T_{2j}$  can be bounded by the operator norm  $\|A\|_{V^2 \mapsto U^2}$  as follows:

$$|T_{2j}| \leq 2\|A^j(1)\|_{U^2} \leq 2\|A\|_{V^2 \mapsto U^2}^j \|A^{j-1}(1)\|_{V^2} \leq \dots \leq 2^j \|A\|_{V^2 \mapsto U^2}^j. \quad (5.23)$$

We hence estimate the operator norm  $\|A\|_{V^2 \mapsto U^2}$  as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \|A(\phi)\|_{U^2} &= \left\| \int_{x < y} e^{2iz(y-x)} u(y) \bar{u}(x) \phi(x) dx \right\|_{DU_y^2} \\ &\leq 4\|e^{2i\text{Re } zy} u\|_{DU_y^2} \|\varphi * (e^{-2i\text{Re } z \cdot} \bar{u} \phi)\|_{U_y^2}, \quad \varphi = e^{-2\text{Im } zt} \mathbf{1}_{t>0} \\ &\leq 4\|e^{2i\text{Re } zy} u\|_{DU^2} \|e^{-2i\text{Re } z \cdot} \bar{u} \phi\|_{DU^2} \leq 8\|e^{2i\text{Re } zy} u\|_{DU^2} \|e^{-2i\text{Re } z \cdot} \bar{u}\|_{DU^2} \|\phi\|_{V^2}, \end{aligned}$$

<sup>3</sup> We can restrict the supremum to step functions. If  $\sup \{B(v, u) \mid \|u\|_{U^2} = 1\} < \infty$ , then  $v \in V^2$ , and if  $\sup \{B(v, u) \mid \|v\|_{V^2} = 1\} < \infty$  and  $u$  is right continuous ruled function with  $\lim_{t \rightarrow -\infty} u(t) = 0$ , then  $u \in U^2$ .

where we used  $\|\varphi * f\|_{U^2} = \|\varphi' * f\|_{DU^2} \leq \|f\|_{DU^2}$ , and hence

$$\|A\|_{V^2 \rightarrow U^2} \leq 8 \|e^{2i\operatorname{Re} z} u\|_{DU^2}^2.$$

We have indeed better estimates for  $\operatorname{Im} z = \tau/2 > 0$ : We can introduce the localised version of  $DU^2$ -norms:

$$\|u\|_{l_\tau^q DU^2} = \|\chi_{[\frac{k}{\tau}, \frac{k+1}{\tau}]} u\|_{DU^2} \|_{\ell_k^q},$$

where  $(\chi_{[\frac{k}{\tau}, \frac{k+1}{\tau}]})_k$  form a partition of unity, such that

$$\|A\|_{V^2 \rightarrow U^2} \leq C \|e^{2i\operatorname{Re} z} u\|_{l_\tau^2 DU^2}^2 \leq C \frac{1 + \operatorname{Re} z + \tau}{\tau} \|u\|_{l_1^2 DU^2}^2, \quad (5.24)$$

where  $l_1^2 DU^2$  can be seen as a substitute of  $H^{-\frac{1}{2}}$  such that  $H^{s_0} \hookrightarrow l_1^2 DU^2$  whenever  $s_0 > -\frac{1}{2}$ .

Therefore if  $\|u\|_{l_1^2 DU^2} \ll 1$ , then by virtue of (5.23)-(5.24) the formal series of  $T^{-1} = 1 + \sum_{j \geq 1} T_{2j}$  converges in the region  $\{z \in \mathcal{U} \mid \operatorname{Im} z \geq 1 + |\operatorname{Re} z|\}$  and in particular on the half-line  $i[1, \infty)$ . And generally, if  $u \in l_1^2 DU^2$ , then for any  $z \in \mathcal{U}$ , there exist  $x_0, x_1 \in \mathbb{R}$  such that

$$\sqrt{(1 + \operatorname{Re} z + \operatorname{Im} z)/\operatorname{Im} z} (\|u|_{(-\infty, x_0]}\|_{l_1^2 DU^2} + \|u|_{[x_1, \infty)}\|_{l_1^2 DU^2}) \leq 1/2C \ll 1,$$

and hence we solve the Lax equation (1.21) first until  $x_0$  (the solvability is ensured by the above argument for the small norm case), and then solve the Lax equation from  $x_0$  to  $x_1$  (the solvability on this finite interval  $[x_0, x_1]$  is ensured by  $u|_{[x_0, x_1]} \in DU^2$  and hence the Lipschitz property of the linear flow), and finally solve the Lax equation from  $x_1$  to  $\infty$  (the solvability is also ensured by the smallness), such that we can still define the holomorphic function  $T^{-1}(z)$  as the first component of the solution at infinity.

In particular if  $z = i\tau/2$ ,  $\tau \geq 1$ , then we have the following estimates for  $T_{2j}, \tilde{T}_{2j}$ ,  $j \geq 2$  similar as in (5.23)-(5.24):

$$|T_{2j}| \leq (C\|u\|_{l_\tau^2 DU^2})^{2j}, \quad |\tilde{T}_{2j}| \leq C(j)\|u\|_{l_\tau^{2j} DU^2}^{2j}. \quad (5.25)$$

#### Step 4 Conserved energies

Motivated by the formulations (5.21)-(5.22) of the  $H^s$ -norm, we define the conserved energy via

$$\mathcal{E}_s(u) = -\frac{2 \sin(\pi s)}{\pi} \int_1^\infty (\tau^2 - 1)^s G(i\tau/2) d\tau, \quad -\frac{1}{2} < s < 0, \quad (5.26)$$

and for general  $N = [s] \geq 0$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{E}_s(u) &= -\frac{2 \sin(\pi s)}{\pi} \int_1^\infty (\tau^2 - 1)^s \left( G(i\tau/2) - \sum_{l=0}^N (-1)^l G_{2l} \tau^{-2l-1} \right) d\tau \\ &\quad + \pi \sum_{l=0}^N \binom{s}{l} G_{2l}, \end{aligned} \quad (5.27)$$

where  $G(z) = \operatorname{Re} \ln T^{-1}(z)$  is a nonnegative harmonic function (as the real part of the logarithm of the holomorphic function  $T^{-1}$  with  $|T^{-1}| \geq 1$ ) on the upper half plane  $\mathcal{U}$  and  $G_{2l}$  are the real coefficients of the expansion of  $G(z)$  at infinity.

For  $-\frac{1}{2} < s < 0$ , we want to bound the following difference

$$|\mathcal{E}_s(u) - \|u\|_{H^s}^2| = \left| \frac{2 \sin(\pi s)}{\pi} \int_1^\infty (\tau^2 - 1)^s \operatorname{Re} \sum_{j=2}^\infty \tilde{T}_{2j}(i\tau/2) d\tau \right|.$$

Recall the estimate (5.25) and we now want to bound the above difference in terms of  $\|u\|_{H^s}$ : Let  $z = i\tau/2$ , then by use of the Littlewood-Paley decomposition  $u = \sum_\mu u_\mu$ ,  $\mu = 2^j$ ,  $j = 0, 1, \dots$  such that  $\|u_\mu\|_{H^s} \sim d_\mu \|u\|_{H^s}$ ,  $\|d_\mu\|_{\ell^2} = 1$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} &\int_1^\infty (\tau^2 - 1)^s |T_2(i\tau/2)| d\tau \leq \int_1^\infty (\tau^2 - 1)^s \sum_{\mu, \nu} |A(1; \bar{u}_\mu, u_\nu)(i\tau/2)| d\tau \\ &\lesssim \int_1^\infty (\tau^2 - 1)^s \sum_{\mu, \nu} \|u_\mu\|_{L^2_{\tau} DU^2} \|u_\nu\|_{L^2_{\tau} DU^2} d\tau \\ &\lesssim \int_1^\infty (\tau^2 - 1)^s \sum_{\mu \geq \nu \geq \tau} d_\mu \mu^{-\frac{1}{2}-s} d_\nu \nu^{-\frac{1}{2}-s} \|u\|_{H^s}^2 d\tau + \sum_{\mu \geq \tau \geq \nu} \dots + \sum_{\tau \geq \mu \geq \nu} \dots \\ &\lesssim \sum_{\mu \geq \nu \geq \tau} d_\mu \left(\frac{\tau}{\mu}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}+s} d_\nu \left(\frac{\tau}{\nu}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}+s} \|u\|_{H^s}^2 + \sum_{\mu \geq \tau \geq \nu} \dots + \sum_{\tau \geq \mu \geq \nu} \dots \lesssim \|u\|_{H^s}^2, \end{aligned}$$

and similarly (but more complicatedly) we can bound

$$\int_1^\infty (\tau^2 - 1)^s (|T_{2j}(i\tau/2)| + |\tilde{T}_{2j}(i\tau/2)|) d\tau \leq \|u\|_{H^s}^2 (C \|u\|_{L^2_1 DU^2})^{2j-2}.$$

Hence if  $\|u\|_{L^2_1 DU^2} \ll 1$ , then

$$|\mathcal{E}_s(u) - \|u\|_{H^s}^2| \leq C \|u\|_{L^2_1 DU^2}^2 \|u\|_{H^s}^2, \quad (5.28)$$

such that the conserved energy  $\mathcal{E}_s(u)$  is equivalent to  $\|u\|_{H^s}^2$ . Therefore the Sobolev norm  $\|u\|_{H^s}$  is “conserved” by the cubic nonlinear Schrödinger flow

(if the solution exists). Indeed, if initially  $\|u_0\|_{L^2_{DU^2}}^2 \lesssim \|u_0\|_{H^s}^2 \leq c_0 \ll 1$  such that  $|\mathcal{E}_s(u_0) - \|u_0\|_{H^s}^2| \leq \frac{1}{2}\|u_0\|_{H^s}^2$  and  $\frac{1}{2}\|u_0\|_{H^s}^2 \leq \mathcal{E}_s(u_0) \leq 2\|u_0\|_{H^s}^2 \leq 2c_0$ , then by the conservation law  $\mathcal{E}_s(u) = \mathcal{E}_s(u_0)$  (if the solution  $u$  exists globally in time) and a bootstrap argument, we have (5.28) and the smallness condition  $\|u\|_{L^2_{DU^2}}^2 \lesssim \|u\|_{H^s}^2 \leq 2\mathcal{E}_s(u) = 2\mathcal{E}_s(u_0) \leq 4c_0 \ll 1$  for all the times. For general initial data with  $\|u_0\|_{H^s} = R < \infty$ , we can do scaling  $u_{0,\lambda}(x) = \frac{1}{\lambda}u_0(\frac{x}{\lambda})$  as in Subsection 1.1.3, such that for  $\lambda$  large enough

$$\|u_{0,\lambda}\|_{H^s} \lesssim \|u_{0,\lambda}\|_{\dot{H}^s} = \lambda^{-(s+\frac{1}{2})}R \leq c_0 \ll 1, \text{ if } s \in (-\frac{1}{2}, 0),$$

and for  $s \geq 0$ , we take  $\lambda$  such that  $\lambda^{-2}R \leq c_0$ . Finally we get the bound for  $\|u\|_{H^s}$  from the control for  $\|u_\lambda\|_{H^s}$ .

For general  $s \geq 0$ , we can also derive the difference estimate  $|\mathcal{E}_s(u) - \|u\|_{H^s}^2| \leq C\|u\|_{L^2_{DU^2}}^2\|u\|_{H^s}^2$ , nevertheless we have to consider the finite expansions of the terms  $\tilde{T}_{2j}$ ,  $j < 2s + 1$  (similar as the finite expansion in the integrand in (5.22) for  $T_2 = \tilde{T}_2 = \wedge$ ) and we do not go further here.

## References

- [1] Thierry Cazenave, Book “Semilinear Schrödinger equations”, AMS, 2004.
- [2] Raphaël Danchin and Pierre Raphaël, Lecture Notes “Soliton, Dispersion et Explosion - Une introduction à l’étude des ondes nonlinéaires.”
- [3] Herbert Koch and Daniel Tataru, Conserved energies for the cubic NLS in 1-D, arXiv 1607.02534, 2016.
- [4] Felipe Linares and Gustavo Ponce, Book “Introduction to nonlinear dispersive equations”, Springer, 2009.
- [5] Peter D. Miller, Lecture Notes “Riemann-Hilbert methods in integrable systems.”
- [6] Jean-Claude Saut, Lecture Notes “Équations d’évolutions dispersives.”